



1  
2  
3  
4

**Document number: DSP1001**  
**Date: 2014-02-11**  
**Version: 1.1.1**

# 5 **Management Profile Specification Usage Guide**

6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17

**Document type: Specification**  
**Document status: DMTF Standard**  
**Document language: en-US**

18 Copyright Notice

19 Copyright © 2006, 2009, 2011, 2014 Distributed Management Task Force, Inc. (DMTF). All rights  
20 reserved.

21 DMTF is a not-for-profit association of industry members dedicated to promoting enterprise and systems  
22 management and interoperability. Members and non-members may reproduce DMTF specifications and  
23 documents, provided that correct attribution is given. As DMTF specifications may be revised from time to  
24 time, the particular version and release date should always be noted.

25 Implementation of certain elements of this standard or proposed standard may be subject to third party  
26 patent rights, including provisional patent rights (herein "patent rights"). DMTF makes no representations  
27 to users of the standard as to the existence of such rights, and is not responsible to recognize, disclose,  
28 or identify any or all such third party patent right, owners or claimants, nor for any incomplete or  
29 inaccurate identification or disclosure of such rights, owners or claimants. DMTF shall have no liability to  
30 any party, in any manner or circumstance, under any legal theory whatsoever, for failure to recognize,  
31 disclose, or identify any such third party patent rights, or for such party's reliance on the standard or  
32 incorporation thereof in its product, protocols or testing procedures. DMTF shall have no liability to any  
33 party implementing such standard, whether such implementation is foreseeable or not, nor to any patent  
34 owner or claimant, and shall have no liability or responsibility for costs or losses incurred if a standard is  
35 withdrawn or modified after publication, and shall be indemnified and held harmless by any party  
36 implementing the standard from any and all claims of infringement by a patent owner for such  
37 implementations.

38 For information about patents held by third-parties which have notified the DMTF that, in their opinion,  
39 such patent may relate to or impact implementations of DMTF standards, visit  
40 <http://www.dmtf.org/about/policies/disclosures.php>.

41

# CONTENTS

42 Foreword ..... 9

43 Introduction..... 10

44 Document conventions..... 10

45     Typographical conventions ..... 10

46     ABNF usage conventions ..... 10

47     Deprecated material..... 10

48     Experimental material ..... 11

49 1 Scope ..... 13

50 2 Normative references ..... 13

51 3 Terms and definitions ..... 14

52 4 Symbols and abbreviated terms..... 23

53 5 Conformance..... 24

54     5.1 Profile and profile specification conformance ..... 24

55     5.2 Implementation conformance ..... 24

56         5.2.1 Interface implementation conformance ..... 24

57         5.2.2 Full implementation conformance ..... 25

58         5.2.3 Implementation conformance of multiple profiles ..... 25

59         5.2.4 Implementation conformance of profile versions..... 25

60         5.2.5 Listener implementation conformance ..... 26

61         5.2.6 Client implementation conformance ..... 26

62     5.3 Instance conformance..... 26

63     5.4 DMTF conformance requirements ..... 26

64 6 Concepts ..... 27

65     6.1 Overview ..... 27

66     6.2 Management domain ..... 28

67     6.3 Managed object type..... 28

68     6.4 Managed environment and managed objects ..... 28

69     6.5 Profile definition ..... 28

70     6.6 Relationships between profile definition and management domain ..... 29

71         6.6.1 Profile defined mappings ..... 29

72         6.6.2 Existence and lifecycle of adaptation instances ..... 29

73         6.6.3 Model effected control of managed objects in a managed environment..... 31

74     6.7 Events and indications ..... 31

75 7 Profile definitions ..... 32

76     7.1 General ..... 32

77     7.2 Profile elements ..... 32

78         7.2.1 General ..... 32

79         7.2.2 Named profile elements..... 32

80     7.3 Usage of requirement levels ..... 33

81         7.3.1 General ..... 33

82         7.3.2 Usage of the "mandatory" requirement level..... 33

83         7.3.3 Usage of the "optional" requirement level ..... 33

84         7.3.4 Usage of the "conditional" requirement level..... 34

85         7.3.5 Usage of the "conditional exclusive" requirement level..... 34

86         7.3.6 Usage of the "prohibited" requirement level ..... 34

87     7.4 Definition of conditions ..... 34

88         7.4.1 General ..... 35

|     |        |   |    |
|-----|--------|---|----|
| 89  | 7.4.2  | Profile implementation condition .....  | 35 |
| 90  | 7.4.3  | Feature implementation condition .....  | 35 |
| 91  | 7.4.4  | Class adaptation implementation condition .....   | 36 |
| 92  | 7.4.5  | Instance existence condition .....  | 36 |
| 93  | 7.4.6  | Property value condition .....  | 38 |
| 94  | 7.4.7  | Managed environment condition .....   | 38 |
| 95  | 7.5    | Discovery mechanisms .....  | 39 |
| 96  | 7.5.1  | General .....   | 39 |
| 97  | 7.5.2  | Discovery through an identified adaptation instance .....                                 | 39 |
| 98  | 7.5.3  | Discovery through a related adaptation instance .....                                     | 39 |
| 99  | 7.5.4  | Implementation discovery through specific property values .....                           | 40 |
| 100 | 7.6    | Definition of the profile identification .....  | 40 |
| 101 | 7.6.1  | General .....   | 40 |
| 102 | 7.6.2  | Registered profile name .....   | 40 |
| 103 | 7.6.3  | Registered profile version .....  | 41 |
| 104 | 7.6.4  | Registered organization name .....  | 41 |
| 105 | 7.6.5  | Organizational contact .....  | 41 |
| 106 | 7.7    | Definition of schema references .....   | 41 |
| 107 | 7.7.1  | General .....   | 41 |
| 108 | 7.7.2  | Schema version .....  | 41 |
| 109 | 7.7.3  | Schema name .....   | 41 |
| 110 | 7.7.4  | Schema organization .....   | 41 |
| 111 | 7.7.5  | Schema experimental flag .....  | 41 |
| 112 | 7.8    | Definition of profile categories .....  | 42 |
| 113 | 7.8.1  | General .....   | 42 |
| 114 | 7.8.2  | Autonomous profiles .....   | 42 |
| 115 | 7.8.3  | Component profiles .....  | 42 |
| 116 | 7.9    | Definition of profile relationships .....   | 42 |
| 117 | 7.9.1  | Definition of profile references .....  | 42 |
| 118 | 7.9.2  | Definition of profile derivation .....  | 44 |
| 119 | 7.9.3  | Definition of scoping relationships .....   | 48 |
| 120 | 7.10   | Definition of abstract and concrete profiles .....  | 51 |
| 121 | 7.10.1 | Abstract profile .....  | 51 |
| 122 | 7.10.2 | Concrete profile .....  | 52 |
| 123 | 7.11   | Definition of the management domain .....   | 52 |
| 124 | 7.12   | Definition of registry references .....   | 53 |
| 125 | 7.13   | Definition of class adaptations .....   | 53 |
| 126 | 7.13.1 | General .....   | 53 |
| 127 | 7.13.2 | Requirements for definitions of all kinds of adaptations .....                            | 54 |
| 128 | 7.13.3 | Requirements for definitions of adaptations of ordinary classes and<br>associations ..... | 63 |
| 129 |        |   |    |
| 130 | 7.13.4 | Requirements for the definition of indication adaptations .....                           | 72 |
| 131 | 7.13.5 | Abstract class adaptation .....   | 73 |
| 132 | 7.13.6 | Trivial class adaptation .....  | 73 |
| 133 | 7.13.7 | Examples of class adaptations .....   | 73 |
| 134 | 7.14   | Requirements for profile registration .....   | 75 |
| 135 | 7.15   | Requirements for the definition of features .....   | 75 |
| 136 | 7.15.1 | Introduction .....  | 75 |
| 137 | 7.15.2 | General feature requirements .....  | 75 |
| 138 | 7.15.3 | Feature name .....  | 76 |
| 139 | 7.15.4 | Feature requirement level .....   | 76 |
| 140 | 7.15.5 | Feature granularity .....   | 76 |
| 141 | 7.15.6 | Feature discovery .....   | 76 |
| 142 | 7.15.7 | Feature requirements .....  | 77 |

|     |        |  |     |
|-----|--------|--|-----|
| 143 | 7.15.8 | Feature example.....   | 78  |
| 144 | 7.16   | Requirements for the definition of use cases .....                   | 80  |
| 145 | 7.16.1 | General .....  | 80  |
| 146 | 7.16.2 | Requirements for the definition of state descriptions .....          | 80  |
| 147 | 7.16.3 | Requirements for the definition of preconditions .....               | 81  |
| 148 | 7.16.4 | Requirements for the definition of flows of activities .....         | 81  |
| 149 | 7.16.5 | Requirements for the definition of postconditions .....              | 81  |
| 150 | 7.17   | Backward compatibility .....   | 82  |
| 151 | 7.18   | Definition of experimental content .....                             | 82  |
| 152 | 7.19   | Deprecation of profile content.....                                  | 82  |
| 153 | 8      | Profile general conventions and guidelines.....                      | 82  |
| 154 | 8.1    | General .....  | 82  |
| 155 | 8.2    | Linguistic and notational conventions .....                          | 83  |
| 156 | 8.3    | Conventions and guidelines for diagrams.....                         | 84  |
| 157 | 8.3.1  | General .....  | 84  |
| 158 | 8.3.2  | General diagram guidelines.....                                      | 85  |
| 159 | 8.3.3  | Diagram color conventions .....                                      | 85  |
| 160 | 8.3.4  | DMTF collaboration structure diagram guidelines.....                 | 86  |
| 161 | 8.3.5  | DMTF adaptation diagram guidelines .....                             | 90  |
| 162 | 8.3.6  | DMTF class diagram guidelines .....                                  | 92  |
| 163 | 8.3.7  | DMTF object diagram guidelines.....                                  | 93  |
| 164 | 8.3.8  | DMTF sequence diagram guidelines.....                                | 95  |
| 165 | 8.3.9  | Designation of deprecated or experimental elements in diagrams ..... | 95  |
| 166 | 9      | Profile implementation requirements.....                             | 95  |
| 167 | 9.1    | General .....  | 95  |
| 168 | 9.2    | Implementation requirements for a set of profiles .....              | 96  |
| 169 | 9.2.1  | General .....  | 96  |
| 170 | 9.2.2  | Implementation adaptation .....                                      | 96  |
| 171 | 9.2.3  | Profile implementation context .....                                 | 96  |
| 172 | 9.2.4  | Implementation optimizations .....                                   | 99  |
| 173 | 9.2.5  | Schema requirements .....  | 99  |
| 174 | 9.3    | Implementation requirements for implementation adaptations.....      | 99  |
| 175 | 9.3.1  | General .....  | 99  |
| 176 | 9.3.2  | Implementation requirements for properties.....                      | 100 |
| 177 | 9.3.3  | Implementation requirements for methods and operations.....          | 100 |
| 178 | 9.3.4  | Instance requirements .....  | 102 |
| 179 | 9.3.5  | Indication generation requirements .....                             | 102 |
| 180 | 9.4    | Merge algorithm .....  | 102 |
| 181 | 9.4.1  | General .....  | 102 |
| 182 | 9.4.2  | Merge algorithm steps.....   | 103 |
| 183 | 9.4.3  | Profile implementation check.....                                    | 103 |
| 184 | 9.4.4  | Adaptation implementation check .....                                | 104 |
| 185 | 9.5    | Implementation of deprecated definitions .....                       | 104 |
| 186 | 10     | Profile specification requirements .....                             | 104 |
| 187 | 10.1   | General .....  | 104 |
| 188 | 10.2   | Profile specification conventions.....                               | 105 |
| 189 | 10.2.1 | Conventions for the specification of requirement levels.....         | 105 |
| 190 | 10.2.2 | Conventions for the specification of implementation types .....      | 105 |
| 191 | 10.2.3 | Conventions for the specification of conditional elements .....      | 105 |
| 192 | 10.2.4 | Conventions for the specification of value constraints .....         | 106 |
| 193 | 10.3   | Profile specification structures .....                               | 109 |
| 194 | 10.3.1 | General .....  | 109 |

195 10.3.2 Condensed profile specification structure ..... 109

196 10.3.3 Traditional profile specification structure ..... 110

197 10.3.4 Usage of profile specification structures..... 111

198 10.4 Requirements for profile specification clauses ..... 112

199 10.4.1 General ..... 112

200 10.4.2 Requirements for the numbering of profile specification clauses and subclauses... 112

201 10.4.3 Requirements for the specification of the "Terms and definitions" clause ..... 113

202 10.4.4 Requirements for the specification of the "Conformance" clause ..... 113

203 10.4.5 Requirements for the specification of the "Synopsis" clause ..... 113

204 10.4.6 Requirements for the specification of the "Description" clause ..... 120

205 10.4.7 Requirements for the specification of the "Implementation" clause ..... 121

206 10.4.8 Requirements for the specification of the "Methods" clause ..... 133

207 10.4.9 Requirements for the specification of the "Use cases" clause ..... 137

208 10.4.10 Requirements for the specification of the "CIM elements" clause..... 139

209 Annex A (Informative) Examples ..... 142

210 A.1 General ..... 142

211 A.2 Example of a "Synopsis" clause ..... 142

212 A.3 Example of a "Description" clause..... 145

213 A.4 Example of an "Implementation" clause ..... 147

214 A.4.1 Example of the general layout of an "Implementation" clause ..... 147

215 A.4.2 Example of feature definitions ..... 147

216 A.4.3 Example of the "Conventions" subclause..... 149

217 A.4.4 Examples of subclauses defining adaptations ..... 149

218 A.4.5 Examples of subclauses defining indication adaptations ..... 157

219 A.5 Example of the "Use cases" clause ..... 161

220 Annex B (informative) Regular expression syntax ..... 165

221 Annex C (informative) Change log ..... 168

222 Bibliography ..... 170

223

224 **Figures**

225 Figure 1 – Profile and management domain..... 27

226 Figure 2 – Existence of adaptation instances ..... 30

227 Figure 3 – Complexity when an implementation decision depends on a runtime element..... 37

228 Figure 4 – Autonomous profile with optional component profiles ..... 50

229 Figure 5 – Two variants of a component profile using another component profile ..... 51

230 Figure 6 – Class adaptation reference example ..... 55

231 Figure 7 – DMTF collaboration structure diagram of an Example Sensors profile ..... 56

232 Figure 8 – Examples of DMTF collaboration structure diagrams..... 78

233 Figure 9 – Example of a DMTF collaboration structure diagram ..... 88

234 Figure 10 – Examples of DMTF adaptation diagrams ..... 91

235 Figure 11 – Examples of DMTF class diagrams ..... 93

236 Figure 12 – Example of profiles and resulting profile implementations ..... 97

237 Figure 13 – Example of merging of adaptations into implementation adaptations ..... 98

238 Figure 14 – Traditional and condensed profile structures..... 111

239

240 **Tables**

241 Table 1 – Example management domain definition..... 52

242 Table 2 – Specification recommendations ..... 83

243 Table 3 – Example of string property format definition ..... 107

244 Table 4 – Requirements for profile specification clauses ..... 112

245 Table 5 – Common text for the "Terms and definitions" clause of profile specifications ..... 113

246 Table 6 – Requirements for the specification of profile attributes..... 114

247 Table 7 – Requirements for columns of the table of profile references ..... 116

248 Table 8 – Requirements for columns of the tables of registry references ..... 117

249 Table 9 – Requirements for columns of the table of features ..... 117

250 Table 10 – Requirements for columns of the table of adaptations ..... 118

251 Table 11 – Requirements for columns of the table of use cases..... 120

252 Table 12 – Profile diagram types ..... 121

253 Table 13 – Requirements for columns of "Element requirements" tables ..... 124

254 Table 14 – Requirements for columns in "Input value requirements" tables ..... 127

255 Table 15 – Requirements for columns in "Method parameter requirements" tables ..... 128

256 Table 16 – Requirements for columns of the "Error reporting requirements" table ..... 130

257 Table 17 – Requirements for columns of the standard message table ..... 131

258 Table 18 – Requirements for columns in method parameter tables..... 134

259 Table 19 – Requirements for columns of the return value table ..... 134

260 Table 20 – Profile convention options..... 135

261 Table A-1 – Example of "Synopsis" clause..... 142

262 Table A-2 – Example of a "Description" clause ..... 146

263 Table A-3 – Overview example of an "Implementation" clause ..... 147

264 Table A-4 – Example definitions of features ..... 147

265 Table A-5 – Example of the "Conventions" subclause ..... 149

266 Table A-6 – Examples of subclauses defining adaptations ..... 150  
267 Table A-7 – Examples of subclauses defining specific indication adaptations ..... 158  
268 Table A-8 – Example of "Use cases" clause..... 161  
269  
270



271

## Foreword

272 The *Management Profile Specification Usage Guide* (DSP1001) was originally prepared by the DMTF  
273 Profile Infrastructure Working Group; which got merged into the DMTF Architecture Working Group.

274 DMTF is a not-for-profit association of industry members dedicated to promoting enterprise and systems  
275 management and interoperability. For information about the DMTF, see <http://www.dmtf.org>.

## 276 Acknowledgments

277 DMTF acknowledges the following individuals for their contributions to this guide:

- 278 • Jim Davis, WBEM Solutions
- 279 • George Ericson, EMC
- 280 • Steve Hand, Symantec
- 281 • Jon Hass, Dell
- 282 • Michael Johanssen, IBM
- 283 • Andreas Maier, IBM
- 284 • Aaron Merkin, Dell
- 285 • Karl Schopmeyer, DMTF Fellow
- 286 • Paul von Behren, Sun Microsystems

287

288

## Introduction

289 The information in this guide should be sufficient for profile authors to incorporate all the semantic and  
290 formal elements required for the specification of a management profile. The information in this guide  
291 should be sufficient for profile implementers to ascertain the implementation requirements imposed by  
292 this guide, by the set of implemented profiles, by the CIM schema and by other appropriate specifications.

### 293 Document conventions

#### 294 Typographical conventions

295 Any text in this document is in normal text font, with the following exceptions:

- 296 • Document titles are marked in *italics*.<sup>1</sup>
- 297 • Important terms that are used for the first time are marked in *italics*.
- 298 • Terms include a link to the term definition in the "Terms and definitions" clause, enabling easy  
299 navigation to the term definition.
- 300 • ABNF rules are in `monospaced font`.

#### 301 ABNF usage conventions

302 Format definitions in this document are specified using ABNF (see [RFC5234](#)), with the following  
303 deviations:

- 304 • Literal strings are to be interpreted as case-sensitive Unicode characters, as opposed to the  
305 definition in [RFC5234](#) that interprets literal strings as case-insensitive US-ASCII characters.
- 306 • The following ABNF rules are frequently applied in this guide:

```
307 CR = %x0D
308 CRLF = CR LF
309 HTAB = %x09
310 LF = %x0A
311 LWSP = *( WSP / CRLF WSP)
312 SP = %x20
313 WS = 1*WSP
314 WSP = SP / HTAB
```

#### 315 Deprecated material

316 Deprecated material is not recommended for use in new development efforts. Existing and new  
317 implementations may use this material, but they shall move to the favored approach as soon as possible.  
318 CIM services shall implement any deprecated elements as required by this document in order to achieve  
319 backwards compatibility. Although CIM clients may use deprecated elements, they are directed to use the  
320 favored elements instead.

321 Deprecated material should contain references to the last published version that included the deprecated  
322 material as normative material and to a description of the favored approach.

---

<sup>1</sup> Note that referencing a profile by its name does not constitute a document title; for details, see 7.6.2.

323 The following typographical convention indicates deprecated material:

---

324 **DEPRECATED**

325 Deprecated material appears here.

326 **DEPRECATED**

---

327 In places where this typographical convention cannot be used (for example, tables or figures), the  
328 "DEPRECATED" label is used alone.

329 **Experimental material**

330 Experimental material has yet to receive sufficient review to satisfy the adoption requirements set forth by  
331 the DMTF. Experimental material is included in this document as an aid to implementers who are  
332 interested in likely future developments. Experimental material may change as implementation  
333 experience is gained. It is likely that experimental material will be included in an upcoming revision of the  
334 document. Until that time, experimental material is purely informational.

335 The following typographical convention indicates experimental material:

---

336 **EXPERIMENTAL**

337 Experimental material appears here.

338 **EXPERIMENTAL**

---

339 In places where this typographical convention cannot be used (for example, tables or figures), the  
340 "EXPERIMENTAL" label is used alone.

341



342

# Management Profile Specification Usage Guide

## 1 Scope

344 This guide defines the usage of and requirements for management profiles and management profile  
345 specification documents.

346 A *management profile* (short: *profile*) defines a management interface between implementations of a  
347 WBEM server and a WBEM client. In addition, a profile may define a management interface between a  
348 WBEM server and a WBEM listener for the delivery of indications. The management interfaces establish  
349 a contract between the involved WBEM components but are not an API because they do not define a  
350 programming interface. A profile defines a model and its behavior in the context of a management  
351 domain. Model and behavior are defined by selecting, specializing, and sometimes constraining elements  
352 from a schema and the set of operations (including indication delivery operations) for a particular  
353 purpose. A profile establishes a relationship between the model and the management domain. A profile  
354 defines use cases on the model that illustrate client visible behavior.

355 A *management profile specification* document (short: *profile specification*) contains the textual  
356 specification of one or more management profiles and may also contain content that does not specify a  
357 profile.

358 Profiles and profile specifications may be owned by DMTF or by other organizations.

359 The target audience for this guide is anyone creating profiles or profile specifications (regardless of  
360 whether these are published by DMTF or published by other organizations), and implementers of profiles.

361 NOTE This guide is not a template for a profile specification. To create a profile specification, start with the  
362 publishing organization's template and add clauses as described in this guide. For profiles published by  
363 DMTF, use [DSP1000](#).

364 NOTE This guide is not a profile specification; it defines the requirements for creating profiles or profile  
365 specifications.

## 2 Normative references

367 The following referenced documents are indispensable for the application of this guide. For dated or  
368 versioned references, only the edition cited (including any corrigenda or DMTF update versions) applies.  
369 For undated and unversioned references, the latest published edition of the referenced document  
370 (including any corrigenda or DMTF update versions) applies.

371 DMTF DSP0004, *CIM Infrastructure Specification 2.6*,  
372 [http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published\\_documents/DSP0004\\_2.6.pdf](http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP0004_2.6.pdf)

373 DMTF DSP0215, *Server Management Managed Element Addressing Specification 1.0*,  
374 [http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published\\_documents/DSP0215\\_1.0.pdf](http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP0215_1.0.pdf)

375 DMTF DSP0223, *Generic Operations 1.0*,  
376 [http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published\\_documents/DSP0223\\_1.0.pdf](http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP0223_1.0.pdf)

377 DMTF DSP0228, *Message Registry XML Schema 1.1*,  
378 [http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published\\_documents/DSP0228\\_1.1.xsd](http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP0228_1.1.xsd)

379 DMTF DSP1033, *Profile Registration Profile 1.0*,  
380 [http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published\\_documents/DSP1033\\_1.0.pdf](http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP1033_1.0.pdf)

- 381 DMTF DSP1053, *Base Metrics Profile 1.0*,  
382 [http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published\\_documents/DSP1053\\_1.0.pdf](http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP1053_1.0.pdf)
- 383 DMTF DSP1054, *Indications Profile 1.1*,  
384 [http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published\\_documents/DSP1054\\_1.1.pdf](http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP1054_1.1.pdf)
- 385 DMTF DSP4014, *DMTF Process for Working Bodies 1.0*,  
386 [http://dmtf.org/sites/default/files/DSP4014\\_1.0.pdf](http://dmtf.org/sites/default/files/DSP4014_1.0.pdf)
- 387 DMTF DSP8016, *WBEM Operations Message Registry 1.0*,  
388 [http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/messageregistry/1/dsp8016\\_1.0.xml](http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/messageregistry/1/dsp8016_1.0.xml)
- 389 DMTF DSP8020, *Message Registry XML Schema Specification 1.0*,  
390 [http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/metricregistry/1/dsp8020\\_1.0.xsd](http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/metricregistry/1/dsp8020_1.0.xsd)
- 391 IETF RFC3629, *UTF-8, a transformation format of ISO 10646*, November 2003,  
392 <http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3629>
- 393 IETF RFC5234, *ABNF: Augmented BNF for Syntax Specifications*, January 2008,  
394 <http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc5234>
- 395 ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2:2004, *Rules for the structure and drafting of International Standards*,  
396 <http://isotc.iso.org/livelink/livelink.exe?func=ll&objId=4230456&objAction=browse&sort=subtype>
- 397 Object Management Group, *OMG UML Superstructure, OMG Unified Modeling Language (OMG UML)*  
398 *Superstructure 2.1.2*  
399 <http://www.omg.org/spec/UML/2.1.2/>
- 400 The Open Group, "Regular Expressions" in *The Single UNIX® Specification, Version 2*,  
401 <http://www.opengroup.org/onlinepubs/7908799/xbd/re.html>

### 402 3 Terms and definitions

403 In this guide, some terms and verbal phrases have a specific meaning beyond the normal English  
404 meaning. Those terms and verbal phrases are defined in this clause.

405 The verbal phrases "shall" ("required"), "shall not", "should" ("recommended"), "should not" ("not  
406 recommended"), "may", "need not" ("not required"), "can" and "cannot" in this document are to be  
407 interpreted as described in [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Annex H. The verbal phrases in parenthesis are  
408 alternatives for the preceding verbal phrase, for use in exceptional cases when the preceding verbal  
409 phrase cannot be used for linguistic reasons. Note that [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Annex H specifies  
410 additional alternatives. Occurrences of such additional alternatives shall be interpreted in their normal  
411 English meaning.

412 The terms "clause", "subclause", "paragraph", "annex" in this document are to be interpreted as described  
413 in [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Clause 5.

414 The terms "normative" and "informative" in this document are to be interpreted as described in [ISO/IEC](#)  
415 [Directives, Part 2](#), Clause 3. In this guide, clauses, subclauses or annexes indicated with "(informative)"  
416 as well as notes and examples do not contain normative content.

417 The terms defined in [DSP0004](#) and [DSP0223](#) apply to this guide.

#### 418 3.1

##### 419 abstract

420 a possible implementation type of class adaptations

421 For details, see 7.13.5.

- 422 **3.2**  
423 **abstract class adaptation**  
424 a class adaptation with an implementation type of "abstract".  
425 The requirements of abstract class adaptations apply only in the context of other class adaptations that  
426 use them as base adaptations.  
427 For details, see 7.13.5.
- 428 **3.3**  
429 **abstract profile**  
430 a special kind of profile specifying common elements and behavior as a base for derived profiles  
431 For a complete definition, see 7.9.2.11.
- 432 **3.4**  
433 **adaptation**  
434 short form for class adaptation
- 435 **3.5**  
436 **adaptation instance**  
437 an instance of an adapted class that complies with all requirements of the class adaptation  
438 For details see 5.3.
- 439 **3.6**  
440 **adapted class**  
441 a class that is the subject of a class adaptation  
442 For details, see 7.13.
- 443 **3.7**  
444 **autonomous profile**  
445 a profile that addresses an autonomous and self-contained management domain  
446 For details, see 7.8.2.
- 447 **3.8**  
448 **backward compatibility**  
449 a characteristic of profiles enabling clients written against prior minor versions of a profile to use the  
450 functionality specified by that version in the context of a profile implementation of a later minor version,  
451 without requiring modifications of the client  
452 For a complete definition, see 7.17.
- 453 **3.9**  
454 **base adaptation**  
455 a class adaptation that is used as the base for another class adaptation  
456 For details, see 7.13.2.1.
- 457 **3.10**  
458 **base profile**  
459 a profile that is used as the base for another profile  
460 For details, see 7.9.1 and 7.9.2.
- 461 **3.11**  
462 **central class adaptation**  
463 a specifically designated class adaptation in a profile  
464 The central class adaptation is the focal point of the profile. For a complete definition, see 7.9.3.2.
- 465 **3.12**  
466 **class**  
467 if used without qualification this term refers to a CIM class that may also be an association class or an  
468 indication class. To refer to a CIM class that is not an association class or an indication class, use the  
469 term "ordinary class". For a complete definition, see [DSP0004](#).

- 470 **3.13**  
471 **class adaptation**  
472 a named profile element that defines requirements and constraints on a class  
473 A class adaptation adapts a class definition from a schema for a particular purpose and may be based on  
474 other class adaptations.  
475 For a complete definition, see 7.13.
- 476 **3.14**  
477 **client**  
478 a WBEM client that exploits applicable portions of a profile  
479 See also the term "implementation".
- 480 **3.15**  
481 **component profile**  
482 a profile that addresses a subset of a management domain  
483 For details, see 7.8.3.
- 484 **3.16**  
485 **concrete profile**  
486 any profile that is not an abstract profile  
487 For a complete definition, see 7.10.2.
- 488 **3.17**  
489 **concrete class adaptation**  
490 any class adaptation that is not an abstract class adaptation  
491 For details, see 7.13.5.
- 492 **3.18**  
493 **condition**  
494 a specification mechanism in profiles that determines whether conditional or conditional exclusive profile  
495 elements shall be implemented  
496 For a complete definition, see 7.4.
- 497 **3.19**  
498 **conditional**  
499 a requirement level indicating that the subject profile requires the implementation of the designated profile  
500 element only under certain conditions, and otherwise leaves the decision to implement the designated  
501 profile element to the implementation  
502 See 7.3 for usage considerations, and 9.2 for implementation considerations.
- 503 **3.20**  
504 **conditional exclusive**  
505 a requirement level indicating that the subject profile requires the implementation of the designated profile  
506 element only under certain conditions, and otherwise prohibits the implementation of the designated  
507 profile element  
508 See 7.3 for usage considerations, and 9.2 for implementation considerations.
- 509 **3.21**  
510 **conditional profile**  
511 a used profile that is referenced by a profile reference with the conditional requirement level
- 512 **3.22**  
513 **conditional exclusive profile**  
514 a used profile that is referenced by a profile reference with the conditional exclusive requirement level



- 515 **3.23**  
516 **deprecated**  
517 keyword indicating that a profile element or profile defined behavior is outdated and has been replaced by  
518 newer constructs  
519 For details, see 7.17.
- 520 **3.24**  
521 **derived profile**  
522 a profile that is based on a referenced profile  
523 For a complete definition, see 7.9.2.
- 524 **3.25**  
525 **discovery mechanism**  
526 a CIM based mechanism yielding a Boolean result that enables clients to discover whether optional,  
527 conditional or conditional exclusive profile elements are implemented or available  
528 For a complete definition, see 7.5.
- 529 **3.26**  
530 **error reporting requirement**  
531 a requirement stated as part of a method requirement or operation requirement to report an error situation  
532 For details, see 7.13.3.2.4 and 7.13.3.3.6.
- 533 **3.27**  
534 **event**  
535 an observable occurrence of a phenomenon of interest  
536 For details, see 6.7.
- 537 **3.28**  
538 **exposed property or method**  
539 a property or method that is available to clients using an adaptation  
540 The set of properties or methods exposed by an adaptation is the union of all properties or methods  
541 defined in the adapted class and its superclasses. In the case where a property or method overrides a  
542 property or method defined in a superclass, the combined effects are exposed as a single property or  
543 method.
- 544 **3.29**  
545 **feature**  
546 a profile element that groups the decisions for the implementation of one or more profile elements into a  
547 single decision  
548 This grouping is established by defining the implementation of other profile elements dependent on the  
549 implementation of the feature.  
550 For a complete definition, see 7.15.
- 551 **3.30**  
552 **implementation**  
553 a WBEM server that implements applicable portions of one or more profiles  
554 For example, in server-side infrastructures using CIM providers, implementation refers to the WBEM  
555 server and the set of providers that implement applicable portions of the set of profiles, that is, the  
556 implementation adaptation set.  
557 For details, see clause 9.
- 558 **3.31**  
559 **implementation adaptation**  
560 an implementation-required adaptation that merges the requirements of its base adaptations and of other  
561 sources such as the schema definition of the adapted class, the operations specification or registry  
562 elements  
563 For a complete definition, see 9.2.2.

- 564 **3.32**  
565 **implementation adaptation set**  
566 the set of implementation adaptations required to be implemented as part of an implementation  
567 For a complete definition, see 9.2.1.
- 568 **3.33**  
569 **implementation-required**  
570 a phrase indicating that the implementation of a profile or profile element is required within an  
571 implementation, including the case where an optional profile or profile element was selected to be  
572 implemented  
573 For a complete definition, see 9.2.1.
- 574 **3.34**  
575 **implementation type**  
576 a type assigned to an adaptation that details how the adaptation is to be implemented  
577 For a complete definition, see 7.13.2.5.
- 578 **3.35**  
579 **incompatibility**  
580 a change that breaks backward compatibility
- 581 **3.36**  
582 **indication**  
583 the notification about an event that occurred
- 584 **3.37**  
585 **indication adaptation**  
586 an adaptation of an indication class
- 587 **3.38**  
588 **indication-generation requirement**  
589 a requirement that states one or more events (see 6.7), each of which individually requires the generation  
590 of a particular indication  
591 For details, see 7.13.4.2.
- 592 **3.39**  
593 **input value requirement**  
594 a requirement stated as part of a property requirement, or of a parameter requirement within a method  
595 requirement, that requires that the implementation accepts a specific input value  
596 For details, see 7.13.2.11.
- 597 **3.40**  
598 **instance requirement**  
599 a requirement that defines how (and in some cases also under which conditions) managed objects are to  
600 be represented by adaptation instances  
601 For details, see 7.13.3.4.
- 602 **3.41**  
603 **listener**  
604 a WBEM listener that implements applicable portions of the Indications profile (see [DSP1054](#))
- 605 **3.42**  
606 **management domain**  
607 area of work or field of activity with common management requirements, common terminology, and  
608 related management functionality  
609 For details, see 6.2.

- 610 **3.43**  
611 **managed environment**  
612 a concrete occurrence of the management domain. A managed environment is composed of managed  
613 objects  
614 For details, see 6.4.
- 615 **3.44**  
616 **managed object**  
617 a physical entity, a service, or other kind of resource that exists independently of its use in management  
618 Managed objects exist in managed environments.  
619 For details, see 6.4.
- 620 **3.45**  
621 **managed object type**  
622 a conceptual generalization or type of managed object  
623 For details, see 6.3.
- 624 **3.46**  
625 **management profile**  
626 definition of a management interface between a WBEM server and a WBEM client or a WBEM listener  
627 For a complete definition, see clause 1.
- 628 **3.47**  
629 **management profile specification**  
630 a specification document that contains the textual specification of one or more management profiles and,  
631 optionally, content that does not represent a management profile  
632 For a complete definition, see clause 1.
- 633 **3.48**  
634 **mandatory**  
635 a requirement level indicating that the subject profile unconditionally requires the implementation of the  
636 designated profile element  
637 See 7.3 for usage considerations, and 9.2 for implementation considerations.
- 638 **3.49**  
639 **mandatory profile**  
640 a used profile that is referenced by a profile reference with the mandatory requirement level
- 641 **3.50**  
642 **match**  
643 keyword indicating that a property or parameter value is within the values specified by a pattern  
644 For details see 10.2.4.
- 645 **3.51**  
646 **method requirement**  
647 a requirement stated as part of a class adaptation that defines requirements and constraints on a method  
648 exposed by the adapted class  
649 For details, see 7.13.3.2.
- 650 **3.52**  
651 **message registry**  
652 a published registry of messages formatted as defined in [DSP0228](#)
- 653 **3.53**  
654 **metric requirement**  
655 a requirement stated as part of a class adaptation that defines requirements and constraints on a metric  
656 defined in a metric registry  
657 For details, see 7.13.3.5.

- 658 **3.54**  
659 **metric registry**  
660 a published registry of metric definitions, and optionally statistics definitions, formatted as defined in  
661 [DSP8020](#)
- 662 **3.55**  
663 **named profile element**  
664 a profile element that is assigned a name with profile name scope  
665 For details, see 7.2.2.
- 666 **3.56**  
667 **operation requirement**  
668 a requirement stated as part of a class adaptation that defines requirements and constraints on an  
669 operation defined in an operations specification  
670 For details, see 7.13.3.3.
- 671 **3.57**  
672 **operations specification**  
673 a specification that specifies operations, their semantics and the model and behavior associated to them  
674 Examples are [DSP0223](#) and [DSP0200](#).
- 675 **3.58**  
676 **optional**  
677 a requirement level indicating that the subject profile leaves the decision to implement the designated  
678 profile element to the implementation  
679 See 7.3 for usage considerations, and 9.2 for implementation considerations.
- 680 **3.59**  
681 **optional profile**  
682 a used profile that is referenced by a profile reference with the optional requirement level
- 683 **3.60**  
684 **ordinary class**  
685 a class that is not an association class or an indication class  
686 For a complete definition, see [DSP0004](#).
- 687 **3.61**  
688 **organization**  
689 in this guide, refers to a consortium, standards group, company, or business entity creating a  
690 management profile
- 691 **3.62**  
692 **pattern**  
693 specification of the permissible values for a property or parameter  
694 See also the term "match", and for details see 10.2.4.
- 695 **3.63**  
696 **profile**  
697 synonym for management profile  
698 See 3.46, and for a complete definition, see clause 1.
- 699 **3.64**  
700 **profile defined model**  
701 a model of a management domain (or a subset of a management domain) defined by a profile that is  
702 composed of class adaptations  
703 For details, see 6.1.

- 704 **3.65**  
705 **profile derivation**  
706 profile derivation establishes a referenced profile as the base profile of the referencing profile  
707 For details, see 7.9.1 and 7.9.2.
- 708 **3.66**  
709 **profile element**  
710 formal elements that this guide establishes to be specified by profiles  
711 For a complete definition, see 7.2.
- 712 **3.67**  
713 **profile implementation**  
714 a subset of an implementation that realizes the requirements of a particular profile in a particular profile  
715 implementation context
- 716 **3.68**  
717 **profile implementation context**  
718 a context in which a profile or an adaptation is implemented  
719 For a complete definition, see 9.2.3.
- 720 **3.69**  
721 **profile specification**  
722 synonym for management profile specification  
723 See 3.47, and for a complete definition see clause 1.
- 724 **3.70**  
725 **profile reference**  
726 a named profile element that references another profile  
727 For details, see 7.9.1.
- 728 **3.71**  
729 **profile usage**  
730 a use of the referenced profile established by a referencing profile  
731 For details, see 7.9.1.
- 732 **3.72**  
733 **prohibited**  
734 a requirement level indicating that the subject profile prohibits the implementation of the designated  
735 profile element  
736 See 7.3 for usage considerations, and 9.2 for implementation considerations.
- 737 **3.73**  
738 **property requirement**  
739 a requirement stated as part of a class adaptation that defines requirements and constraints on a property  
740 exposed by the adapted class.  
741 For details, see 7.13.2.8.
- 742 **3.74**  
743 **referenced profile**  
744 a profile that is referenced by another profile, establishing either profile derivation or a profile usage  
745 For a complete definition, see 7.9
- 746 **3.75**  
747 **referencing profile**  
748 a profile that references another profile, establishing either profile derivation or a profile usage  
749 For a complete definition, see 7.9.

- 750 **3.76**  
751 **registry reference**  
752 a named profile element referencing a message registry or a metric registry  
753 For details, see 7.12.
- 754 **3.77**  
755 **related profile**  
756 deprecated synonym for referenced profile
- 757 **3.78**  
758 **requirement level**  
759 designator that indicates the requirement for implementing profile elements or used profiles
- 760 **3.79**  
761 **schema**  
762 a named set of classes with a single defining authority or owning organization  
763 The classes in a schema have the same schema prefix in their class name. For a complete definition, see  
764 [DSP0004](#).
- 765 NOTE DMTF defines two schemas: The Common Information Model (schema prefix CIM) and the Problem  
766 Resolution Schema (schema prefix PRS)
- 767 **3.80**  
768 **schema element**  
769 generally, refers to schema elements as defined in [DSP0004](#)  
770 In this guide, the term is used for the subset of schema elements that may be constrained by profiles:  
771 classes (including association classes and indication classes), properties (including references), methods,  
772 and parameters
- 773 **3.81**  
774 **scoping class adaptation**  
775 a specifically designated class adaptation in a profile that is the algorithmic focal point for identifying  
776 profile conformance when using the scoping class methodology.  
777 For a complete definition, see 7.9.3.3.
- 778 **3.82**  
779 **scoped profile**  
780 a profile that receives a scope provided by a scoping profile. Synonymous with component profile  
781 For details, see 7.9.3.
- 782 **3.83**  
783 **scoping path**  
784 an association traversal path between the central class adaptation and the scoping class adaptation.  
785 For details, see 7.9.3.4.
- 786 **3.84**  
787 **scoping profile**  
788 a profile that provides a scope to a scoped profile by defining a class adaptation that is compatible with  
789 the scoping class adaptation defined by a scoped profile  
790 For details, see 7.9.3.
- 791 **3.85**  
792 **span of a class adaptation**  
793 the directed acyclic graph that contains the class adaptation, all (direct or indirect) base adaptations of the  
794 class adaptation, the adapted class, and all its superclasses.  
795 For a complete definition, see 7.13.2.1.

- 796 **3.86**  
797 **state description**  
798 a named profile element that describes of the state of an instance of (a subset of) the model defined by a  
799 profile at a particular point in time  
800 For a complete definition, see 7.16.2.
- 801 **3.87**  
802 **subject profile**  
803 a profile created or verified in conformance to this guide
- 804 **3.88**  
805 **trivial class adaptation**  
806 a class adaptation that does not add requirements beyond those defined by the adapted class and, if  
807 defined, by its base adaptations  
808 For details, see 10.4.7.4.
- 809 **3.89**  
810 **use case**  
811 a named profile element that defines an interaction of an external client and an implementation in the  
812 execution of steps required to be performed in the realization of functionality defined in a profile  
813 For details, see 7.16.
- 814 **3.90**  
815 **used profile**  
816 a referenced profile that is used by the referencing profile
- 817 **3.91**  
818 **WBEM client**  
819 a CIM client (see [DSP0004](#)) that supports a WBEM protocol  
820 A WBEM client originates WBEM server operations. This definition does not imply any particular  
821 implementation architecture or scope, such as a client library component or an entire management  
822 application. For details, see [DSP0223](#).
- 823 **3.92**  
824 **WBEM listener**  
825 a CIM listener (see [DSP0004](#)) that supports a WBEM protocol  
826 A WBEM listener processes WBEM listener operations. This definition does not imply any particular  
827 implementation architecture or scope, such as a client library component or an entire management  
828 application. For details, see [DSP0223](#).
- 829 **3.93**  
830 **WBEM protocol**  
831 a communications protocol between WBEM client, WBEM server and WBEM listener  
832 A WBEM protocol defines how the WBEM operations work, on top of an underlying protocol layer (for  
833 example, HTTP, SOAP, or TCP). For details, see [DSP0223](#).
- 834 **3.94**  
835 **WBEM server**  
836 a CIM server (see [DSP0004](#)) that supports a WBEM protocol  
837 A WBEM server processes WBEM server operations, and originates WBEM listener operations. This  
838 definition does not imply any particular implementation architecture, such as a separation into generic and  
839 adaptation-specific (provider) components. For details, see [DSP0223](#).

## 840 **4 Symbols and abbreviated terms**

- 841 Most of these symbols and abbreviated terms are also applicable to profile specifications.
- 842 NOTE A list of symbols and abbreviated terms to be included in profile specifications is provided in [DSP1000](#).

843 For the purposes of this guide, the following symbols and abbreviated terms apply, in addition to those  
844 defined in [DSP0004](#) and [DSP0223](#):

845 **4.1**

846 **ACID**

847 atomicity, consistency, isolation, and durability

848 **4.2**

849 **CSD**

850 DMTF collaboration structure diagram

851 For details, see 8.3.4.

852 **4.3**

853 **PUG**

854 Profile Usage Guide (the usage guide for specifying profiles specified in this document, DSP1001)

855 **4.4**

856 **UFcT**

857 User Friendly class Tag, as defined in [DSP0215](#)

858 **4.5**

859 **UFIT**

860 User Friendly instance Tag, as defined in [DSP0215](#)

861 **5 Conformance**

862 This clause defines conformance requirements for profiles, profile specifications, implementations, and  
863 instances.

864 **5.1 Profile and profile specification conformance**

865 A profile is conformant to this guide if it satisfies all normative requirements defined in this guide for  
866 profiles. The normative requirements for profiles are detailed in clause 7 and in clause 8.

867 A profile specification is conformant to this guide if it satisfies all normative requirements defined in this  
868 guide for profile specifications. The normative requirements for profile specifications are detailed in  
869 clause 10 .

870 **5.2 Implementation conformance**

871 **5.2.1 Interface implementation conformance**

872 A profile implementation is interface conformant to the profile if it conforms to all profile requirements that  
873 are defined only in terms of the profile defined model. Interface implementation conformance does not  
874 cover the relationship of instances and managed objects.

875 Interface conformance can be validated exclusively by the use of the profile defined interface; this  
876 validation approach is also referred to as black box testing.

877 Examples of requirements defined only in terms of the model are as follows:

- 878 • Value constraints that restrict a property value to a set of possible values, such as restricting the  
879 value of an EnabledState property to the values 2 (Enabled) or 3 (Disabled)



- 880       • Requirements for the existence of instances as a result of the successful execution of an  
881       operation or method

882 NOTE   However, it should be noted that if such a test is performed by creating the instance in a first step, and  
883       obtaining the instance in a second step, it is absolutely possible that the instance was already modified or  
884       deleted again after the first step, but before the second step is performed. For that reason a more realistic  
885       test is checking the dependency between the instance and the managed object that it represents. See  
886       5.2.2 for white box testing, and see also 6.6.2 for the existence of instances.

887 Examples of requirements that are not defined only in terms of the model are as follows:

- 888       • The requirement that specific managed objects are to be represented by instances
- 889       • The requirement that a property value shall reflect a part of the state of a managed object, such  
890       as stating that the value 2 (Enabled) of an EnabledState property corresponds to the On state of  
891       the managed object
- 892       • The requirement that the execution of an operation or method causes a specified change in the  
893       managed environment, such as the activation of a managed object in the case where a change  
894       of the EnabledState property to 2 (Enabled) in the CIM instance representing the managed  
895       object is requested

## 896 5.2.2 Full implementation conformance

897 Full implementation conformance extends interface implementation conformance by also considering  
898 profile defined requirements that establish the relationship of the profile defined model and the managed  
899 environment.

900 Full implementation conformance can be validated only by crosschecking the situation in the managed  
901 environment with the situation as viewed through the profile defined interface. Consequently, the  
902 validation of full implementation conformance requires direct access to the managed environment such  
903 that the situation inspected through that direct access can be cross checked against the situation  
904 presented by an implementation through the profile defined model; this validation approach is also  
905 referred to as white box testing.

## 906 5.2.3 Implementation conformance of multiple profiles

907 An implementation that implements multiple profiles is conformant to that set of profiles, if it is conformant  
908 to each profile.

909 NOTE   Profiles may have dependencies, for example, class adaptations in one profile being based on managed  
910       environments in other profiles.

## 911 5.2.4 Implementation conformance of profile versions

912 Profile versions are identified with the complete set of version numbers as defined in [DSP4014](#): major,  
913 minor, and update version number. However, as defined in 7.9.1, a subject profile refers to referenced  
914 profiles by specifying only the major and minor version number, implying the latest published update  
915 versions of the referenced profiles. Consequently it is possible that various implementations of a  
916 comprehensive set of profiles (such as an identified version of a particular subject profile, and all its  
917 referenced profiles), that are created at different points in time, use different update versions of the  
918 referenced profiles.

919 For that reason, conformance of a *profile implementation* to a profile is defined only with regard to a  
920 specific update version of that profile.

921 For example, if a particular profile P1 references version 1.0 of P2, and if P1 was written when version  
922 1.0.1 of a referenced profile P2 was published, at that time P1 would effectively reference version 1.0.1 of  
923 P2 and an implementation implementing P1 and P2 would have to implement version 1.0.1 of P2. When  
924 at a later point in time version 1.0.2 of P2 is published, from that time on P1 would effectively reference

925 version 1.0.2 of P2, and an implementation implementing P1 and P2 would then have to implement  
926 version 1.0.2 of P2. Thus the first implementation conforms to version 1.0.1 of P2, and the second  
927 implementation conforms to version 1.0.2 of P2. The backward compatibility rules defined in 7.17 strive  
928 for only permitting changes that do not invalidate the second implementation to version 1.0.1 of P2;  
929 however — as detailed in 7.17 — it is possible that version 1.0.2 introduces incompatible changes as part  
930 of error corrections.

### 931 5.2.5 Listener implementation conformance

932 A WBEM listener is conformant to [DSP1054](#) if it implements all requirements targeting WBEM listeners.  
933 Note that profiles implementing [DSP1054](#) reference a particular version, and conformance is required  
934 with respect to that version.

935 Further, a conformant WBEM listener shall implement the indication delivery related listener operations  
936 defined in the operations specification. Note that this guide does not require that the same operations  
937 specification is selected for the communication between the WBEM server and the WBEM listener, and  
938 that between the WBEM client and the WBEM server.

### 939 5.2.6 Client implementation conformance

940 There is no explicit concept of client conformance. However, a client intending to successfully  
941 interoperate with an implementation needs to adhere to the preconditions defined by the implemented  
942 profiles and by other specifications referenced by them.

## 943 5.3 Instance conformance

944 An instance of a CIM class is conformant to a class adaptation if it satisfies all normative requirements of  
945 the class adaptation, including those originating from base adaptations and from the schema.

946 NOTE The collection of normative requirements of a particular class adaptation in the context of an  
947 implementation is a complex process that must consider all involved sources of requirements, such as  
948 base adaptations, the CIM schema definition of the adapted class, and operations specifications; see  
949 clause 9 for a detailed description of that process.

## 950 5.4 DMTF conformance requirements

951 The following rules apply to management profiles and management profile specifications owned by  
952 DMTF:

- 953 • Management profiles owned by DMTF shall conform to this guide. The normative requirements  
954 for profiles are detailed in clause 7 and in clause 8.
- 955 • Management profile specifications owned by DMTF shall conform to this guide. The normative  
956 requirements for profile specifications are detailed in clause 10. In addition, the standard DMTF  
957 specification format (see [DSP1000](#)) applies to DMTF-owned management profile specifications.

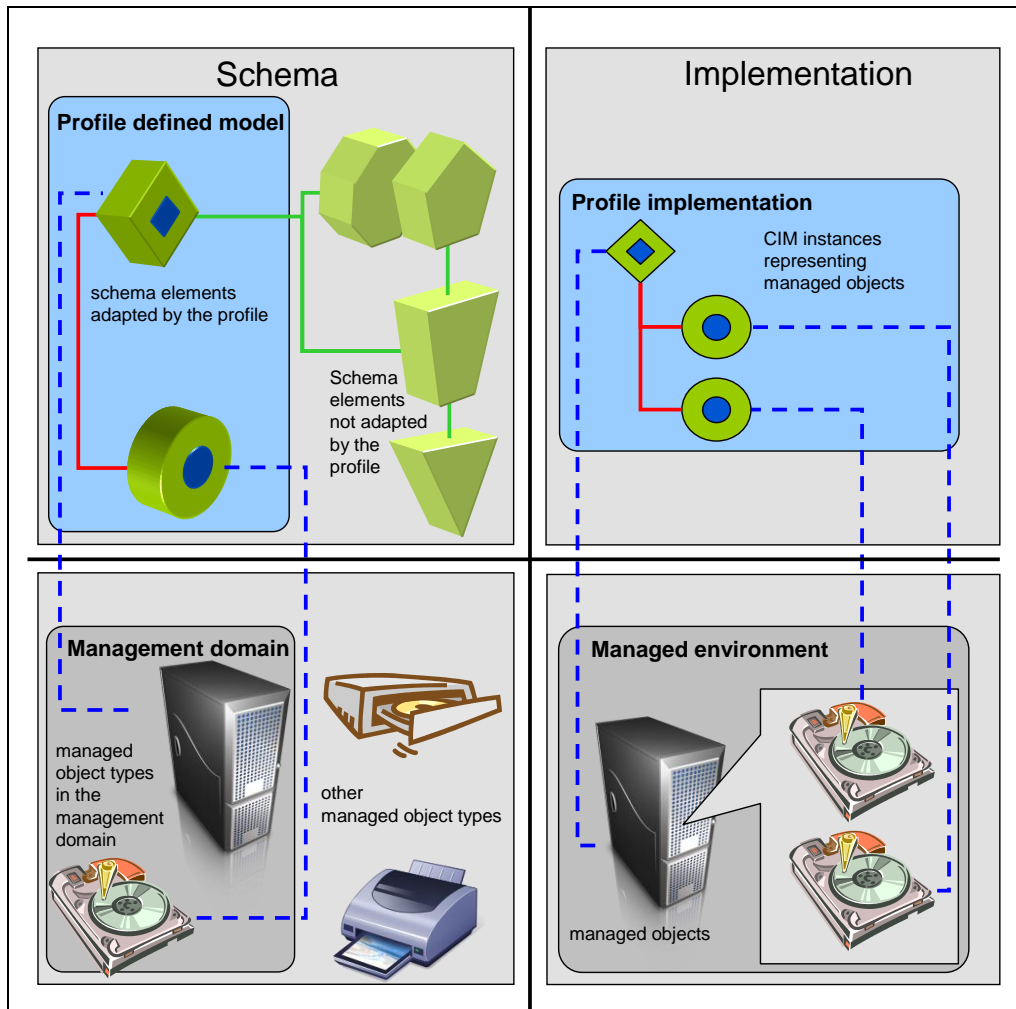
958 NOTE Other organizations may create their own guidelines for management profile specifications they publish. If  
959 such profile specifications are to be conformant to this guide, these guidelines would have to incorporate,  
960 reference, and optionally extend the requirements defined in this guide.

961 **6 Concepts**

962 This clause presents an introduction to general profile concepts established by this guide.

963 **6.1 Overview**

964 Figure 1 illustrates the profile defined model and its relationship to the management domain, as well as a  
 965 corresponding profile implementation and its relationship to a managed environment.



966  
 967

**Figure 1 – Profile and management domain**

968 The left side of Figure 1 shows the profile defined model and its related management domain. Model and  
 969 behavior are defined by selecting, specializing, and sometimes constraining elements from a schema  
 970 and the set of operations for a particular purpose; in other words, the profile adapts elements from a schema  
 971 for a particular purpose. The management domain is composed of managed object types. The classes  
 972 adapted by a profile model aspects of these object types. A profile establishes a relationship between the  
 973 model and the management domain. In addition, a profile defines use cases on the model that illustrate  
 974 client visible behavior.

975 The right side of Figure 1 shows a profile implementation and a related managed environment. Each  
 976 profile implementation provides access to a set of related CIM instances to a CIM client. These CIM  
 977 instances represent corresponding managed objects in the managed environment and conform to the

978 client visible management interfaces and behaviors defined in the profile. Note that the right side of  
979 Figure 1 shows only one profile implementation and only one related managed environment; however, in  
980 reality, potentially multiple profile implementations coexist, and each profile implementation typically  
981 provides management capabilities for multiple related managed environments.

## 982 **6.2 Management domain**

983 A profile describes a *management domain* by defining the set of *managed object types* that compose the  
984 management domain. In addition, the profile may define requirements and constraints on the components  
985 of the management domain.

986 A management domain is an area of work or field of activity. Commonalities in a management domain are  
987 a set of common management requirements, a common terminology, and related functionality. Examples  
988 of management domains are a computer system, system virtualization, or file system.

989 Complex management domains may be subdivided into smaller management domains where each  
990 subdomain narrows down the area of work or field of activity. For example, a subdivision of the file system  
991 management domain might contain management subdomains such as file access, file locking, or file  
992 representation.

993 If a management domain is subdivided into a set of subdomains, these may be likewise covered by  
994 separate profiles. This guide defines several types of profile relationships enabling this decomposition.

## 995 **6.3 Managed object type**

996 A *managed object type* is a conceptual generalization or type of manageable things in a management  
997 domain. Examples of managed object types composing the computer system management domain are  
998 system, device, or service. Examples of managed object types composing the file system management  
999 domain are file, directory, access list, or lock.

1000 Relationships may exist between managed object types. For example, in the file system management  
1001 domain directories are composed of files, and files may be linked to each other.

## 1002 **6.4 Managed environment and managed objects**

1003 A *managed environment* is a concrete occurrence of a management domain and is composed of  
1004 *managed objects*. For example, a managed environment within the file system management domain is a  
1005 concrete Linux ext3 file system that resides on some storage media and is composed of objects such as  
1006 the file system itself, its files, directories, links, access lists, or quotas. For a particular type of managed  
1007 environment (for example, Linux ext3 file systems) specific management instrumentation (such as a set of  
1008 commands, or an API) may exist that allow the inspection and manipulation of managed objects in  
1009 respective managed environments. For example, instances of the Linux ext3 file system in a desktop  
1010 installation may be inspected and manipulated through means of the Linux ext3 file system device  
1011 drivers.

1012 Profiles are implemented for one or more types of managed environments. For example, for a profile  
1013 addressing the file system management domain one implementation might cover the Linux ext3 file  
1014 system and another separate implementation might cover the FAT file system and the Microsoft NTFS file  
1015 system.

## 1016 **6.5 Profile definition**

1017 A profile defines a management interface for a management domain. The semantics of that management  
1018 interface as well as the behavior of the managed objects in their managed environment are defined by a  
1019 model that is composed of a set of class adaptations. Each class adaptation defines a set of requirements  
1020 and constraints on the use of a class for a particular purpose. Class adaptations are defined in 7.13.

## 1021 6.6 Relationships between profile definition and management domain

### 1022 6.6.1 Profile defined mappings

1023 A profile defines the following mappings:

- 1024 • the mapping between managed object types composing a management domain and class  
1025 adaptations modeling (aspects of) these managed object types.

1026 This kind of mapping is established in profiles by means of defining the management domain  
1027 addressed by the profile, particularly the managed object types in that management domain,  
1028 and by further stating for each adaptation which (aspect of a) managed object type is modeled  
1029 by that adaptation; for details, see 7.11 and 7.13.2.2.

- 1030 • the mapping between managed objects composing a managed environment and adaptation  
1031 instances representing aspects of these managed objects.

1032 This kind of mapping is established in profiles by means of instance requirements stated as part  
1033 of the definition of adaptations; for details, see 7.13.3.4.

1034 These mappings have a substantial impact on the applicability of the profile and should be stated with  
1035 great care, particularly when specifying the exact set or subset of managed objects that are to be  
1036 represented by adaptation instances.

### 1037 6.6.2 Existence and lifecycle of adaptation instances

1038 In a managed environment the managed objects or relationships between them can potentially appear,  
1039 disappear, or change at any time.

1040 For example, in a file system files are frequently created, deleted, or modified. Such changes may be  
1041 effected by means of the management interface defined by the profile as described in 6.6.3, but in  
1042 general the cause for such changes is outside the scope of the profile implementation.

1043 Recall that adaptation instances are instances of CIM classes that conform to the requirements of a  
1044 particular adaptation; see 3.5.

1045 The *existence* of adaptation instances is a logical concept: A particular adaptation instance is defined to  
1046 exist in a namespace of a particular WBEM server exactly as long as the managed object that is  
1047 represented by that adaptation instance exists in the managed environment.

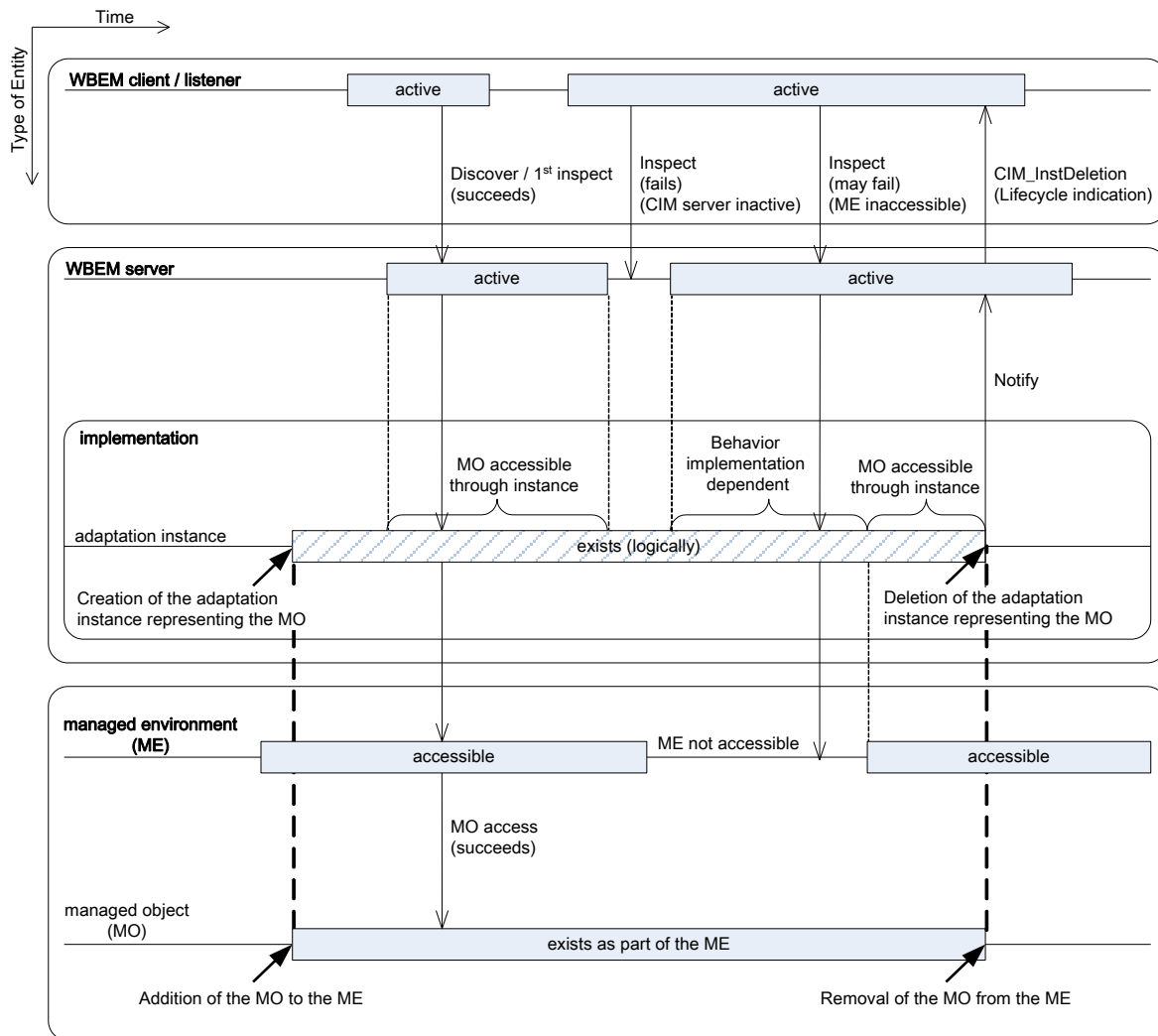
1048 It is emphasized that the existence of adaptation instances is a *logical concept*; particularly, the existence  
1049 of an adaptation instance does not imply that the WBEM server in context of that the instance exists is  
1050 active or that the managed environment containing the managed object representing the adaptation  
1051 instance is accessible by the implementation within the WBEM server. Consequently, existing instances  
1052 are not required to be visible to the clients all time.

1053 NOTE One reason for defining the existence of adaptation instances as a logical concept independent from the  
1054 activity state of the related WBEM server is avoiding the re-creation of adaptation instances when the  
1055 WBEM server restarts that — among other consequences — would require the generation of respective  
1056 lifecycle indications.

1057 The *creation* of an adaptation instance is defined to occur when the represented managed object is  
1058 added to the managed environment. This can occur if either a pre-existing managed object is added to  
1059 the managed environment, or if a managed object is created within the managed environment. The  
1060 former is typical for tangible managed objects such as disk drives or fans, while the latter is typical for  
1061 intangible managed objects such as files, log entries or virtual systems. The creation of an adaptation  
1062 instance is also the event that triggers the generation of a respective lifecycle indication; see 6.7.

1063 The *deletion* of an adaptation instance is defined to occur when the represented managed object is  
 1064 removed from the managed environment. This occurs as a managed object such as a hardware  
 1065 component is removed from the managed environment, but also if a managed object such as a database  
 1066 record is deleted and thus no longer exists as part of the managed environment. The deletion of an  
 1067 adaptation instance is also the event that triggers the generation of a respective lifecycle indication; see  
 1068 6.7.

1069 These interrelationships are detailed in Figure 2.



1070

1071

**Figure 2 – Existence of adaptation instances**

1072 Figure 2 further details that the existence of an adaptation instance does not require that the WBEM  
 1073 server in context of that the instance exists is active. This implies that an existing adaptation instance is  
 1074 not all times accessible by clients. Various other reasons may also impede client access to adaptation  
 1075 instances, such as for example the implementation not being able to access the managed object in the  
 1076 managed environment.

1077 All the information exposed by an adaptation instance originates from the represented managed object.  
 1078 While a managed object is not accessible by the implementation, the representing adaptation instance(s)  
 1079 should not expose imprecise, outdated or otherwise unsynchronized information about the current state of  
 1080 the managed object. In case of doubt an implementation should raise an error or otherwise indicate that

1081 the represented managed object is not accessible, or that certain property values are not available; for  
1082 example, the special value Null can be used to indicate the absence of a value.

1083 As a consequence, the only cause for a change in an adaptation instance is a respective change in the  
1084 represented managed object. It is emphasized that this is also the case if the change was caused by the  
1085 execution of a method on a CIM instance that represents that managed object; for details, see 6.6.3.

1086 NOTE There is much flexibility in defining managed object types. For example, it is possible for a profile to define  
1087 managed object types such that configuration data is separated from functional data. That way an  
1088 implementation could be realized such that configuration data is kept separately in a database and would  
1089 be accessible while the database is accessible, whereas functional data would only be accessible if the  
1090 functional part of a managed object is accessible; however, if a client requests a complete adaptation  
1091 instance, the previously mentioned restrictions on exposing information apply also in this case with respect  
1092 to the functional part.

1093 Adaptation instances are inherently volatile. A profile intending to enable a client to continuously monitor  
1094 the state of a managed object existing in a managed environment has two possibilities:

- 1095 • require the client to continuously poll the information from the implementation. In this situation  
1096 the client could for example repeatedly invoke the `GetInstance( )` operation of the adaptation  
1097 instance representing the specific aspect being monitored. In a more comfortable case the  
1098 profile could adapt a class providing a specific method designed to return information about any  
1099 changes since the last poll.
- 1100 • model indications as described in 6.7.

### 1101 6.6.3 Model effected control of managed objects in a managed environment

1102 CIM initiated modifications on the model are only actable if the represented managed environment admits  
1103 such modifications. Profiles may define CIM-based control of managed objects in a managed  
1104 environment by assigning management domain specific semantics to methods or operations defined by  
1105 the model; for details, see 7.13.3.2 or 7.13.3.3. If such a method or operation is invoked, the  
1106 implementation issues requests to the affected managed object in the managed environment in order to  
1107 perform the profile defined semantics of the method or operation. The mechanisms applied for this  
1108 forwarding are implementation dependent. Depending on conditions that prevail in the managed  
1109 environment the request may or may not succeed.

1110 Adaptation instances represent aspects of managed objects in the managed environment. This includes  
1111 reflecting the state of the managed object after completing changes effected through the model, such as  
1112 the invocation of methods or operations. However, after, or coincident with, such a change, other actions  
1113 not effected through the model can also affect the state and are represented by the adaptation instance.  
1114 This situation drives the need for profiles to define the means that indicate completion for model effected  
1115 changes.

## 1116 6.7 Events and indications

1117 An event is an observable occurrence of a phenomenon of interest. Profiles specify events as part of  
1118 indications. For details, see [DSP1054](#).

1119 Indications model notifications about events. Notifications about events that are related to CIM instances  
1120 representing particular managed objects are modeled as *lifecycle indications*; notifications about other  
1121 kinds of events are modeled through *alert indications*; for details, see [DSP1054](#).

## 1122 7 Profile definitions

### 1123 7.1 General

1124 Clause 7 defines the requirements for definitions in profiles. It focuses on the profile content, regardless  
1125 of the format that is chosen to specify the profile. Clause 8 defines general conventions and guidelines  
1126 that apply for all kinds of profiles. Clause 10 defines the requirements for profile specification documents,  
1127 focusing on formal text document aspects.

### 1128 7.2 Profile elements

#### 1129 7.2.1 General

1130 Profile elements are the (kinds of) formal elements that this guide establishes to be specified by profiles.

1131 This guide defines following profile elements for the use in profiles:

- 1132 • adaptations (see 7.13)
- 1133 • features (see 7.15)
- 1134 • profile references (see 7.9.1)
- 1135 • registry references (see 7.12)
- 1136 • property requirements (see 7.13.2.8)
- 1137 • method requirements (see 7.13.3.2)
- 1138 • operation requirements (see 7.13.3.3)
- 1139 • input value requirements (see 7.13.2.11)
- 1140 • error reporting requirements (see 7.13.3.3.6)
- 1141 • state descriptions (see 7.16.2)
- 1142 • use cases (see 7.16)

1143 In many cases the requirements defined in a profile for a profile element are based on, refer to, extend or  
1144 further constrain an entity that is defined outside of the profile. For example, an adaptation defined in a  
1145 profile adapts a class defined in a schema for a particular purpose; or a registry reference refers to a  
1146 registry of certain things such as messages or metrics, which are applied or used other definitions within  
1147 the profile.

#### 1148 7.2.2 Named profile elements

1149 The following profile elements are defined as named profile elements: adaptations, features, profile  
1150 references, registry references, state descriptions and use cases.

1151 A named profile element shall be assigned a name that uniquely identifies the named profile element  
1152 within the scope of the profile defining the named profile element. Uniqueness is only required separately  
1153 for each kind of named profile element; consequently, it is possible that within one profile for example a  
1154 feature has the same name as an adaptation.

1155 The name shall conform to the format defined for the ABNF rule IDENTIFIER in Annex A of [DSP0004](#).

1156 The name should be composed of a concatenated sequence of words, with each word starting with a  
1157 capital letter.

1158 NOTE This notation is occasionally termed camel-case notation (starting with a capital letter).



1159 Profile element names are part of the normative definitions of a profile; the rules for backward  
1160 compatibility and deprecation as defined in 7.17 and 7.19 apply.

1161 For example, StateManagement might name a feature that defines a model for the management of the  
1162 state of managed objects. If version 1.0 had introduced that feature, subsequent minor versions would be  
1163 required to retain the StateManagement feature under that name, and with identical or compatibly  
1164 extended semantics. Subsequent minor versions could deprecate the feature, but only a new major  
1165 version would be allowed to remove the feature.

1166 Examples of adaptation names are Fan for an adaptation of the CIM\_Fan class, or FanOfSystem for an  
1167 adaptation of the CIM\_SystemDevice association modeling the relationship between systems and fans.

1168 Examples of profile reference names are DiskSpeedSensors and DiskTemperatorSensors for *two* profile  
1169 references defined by an Example Disk profile referencing an Example Sensors profile for the two  
1170 purposes: The modeling of disk speed sensors and disk temperature sensors.

## 1171 **7.3 Usage of requirement levels**

### 1172 **7.3.1 General**

1173 This subclause defines the usage of requirement levels by profiles. Requirement levels designate the  
1174 requirement for implementing profile elements.

1175 Occasionally individual requirement levels may be defined for specific purposes, such as the  
1176 presentation, initialization or modification of adaptation instances.

1177 The following requirement levels are defined:

- 1178 • Mandatory, as defined in 3.48
- 1179 • Optional, as defined in 3.58
- 1180 • Conditional, as defined in 3.19
- 1181 • Conditional exclusive, as defined in 3.20
- 1182 • Prohibited, as defined in 3.72

1183 It is emphasized that dependencies on other profile elements defined in the same or in other profiles, as  
1184 well as dependencies on referenced definitions for example from referenced schemas or registries, may  
1185 impose additional implementation requirements. The determination of implementation requirements and  
1186 the effects of requirement levels with respect to the implementation requirements of profile elements are  
1187 described in clause 9.

1188 NOTE Requirement levels are formally defined only for the designation of profile elements (see 7.2). However,  
1189 profiles may state other provisions such as instance requirements or indication-generation requirements  
1190 using normative language (primarily verbal phrases such as "shall", "may", "should", etc.).

### 1191 **7.3.2 Usage of the "mandatory" requirement level**

1192 A subject profile should designate a profile element as mandatory if it unconditionally requires the  
1193 implementation of the designated profile element. Clients can rely on mandatory profile elements being  
1194 implemented once they have determined that the subject profile is implemented.

### 1195 **7.3.3 Usage of the "optional" requirement level**

1196 A subject profile should designate a profile element as optional if it leaves the decision to implement the  
1197 profile element to the implementation. In other words, the implementation of an optional profile element is  
1198 considered auxiliary or complementary from the perspective of the subject profile.

1199 A CIM based discovery mechanism (see 7.5) should be defined that enables clients — after having  
1200 determined that the subject profile is implemented — to determine whether the optional profile element is  
1201 implemented. A CIM based discovery mechanism (see 7.5) shall be defined if other profile elements are  
1202 defined as conditional or conditional exclusive on the optional profile element.

1203 A profile that intends to define multiple optional profile elements that are useful to clients only as a group  
1204 should define an optional feature (see 7.15) and define the elements as conditional on the implementation  
1205 of that optional feature.

#### 1206 **7.3.4 Usage of the "conditional" requirement level**

1207 A subject profile should designate a profile element as conditional if it requires the implementation of the  
1208 designated profile element only under certain conditions, and otherwise leaves the decision to implement  
1209 the designated profile element to the implementation.

1210 For any profile element designated as conditional, the condition shall be defined using one of the  
1211 mechanisms defined in 7.4.

1212 A CIM based discovery mechanism (see 7.5) shall be defined that enables clients — after having  
1213 determined that the subject profile is implemented — to determine whether the conditional profile element  
1214 is available. The discovery mechanism may be defined indirectly, such that the discovery mechanism for  
1215 one conditional profile element by means of conditional dependencies is delegated to that of another  
1216 profile element; particularly, this is the case with feature implementation conditions (see 7.4.3) and  
1217 feature discovery (see 7.15.6).

#### 1218 **7.3.5 Usage of the "conditional exclusive" requirement level**

1219 A subject profile should designate a profile element as conditional exclusive if it requires the  
1220 implementation of the designated profile element only under certain conditions, and otherwise prohibits  
1221 the implementation of the designated profile element.

1222 NOTE This is different from conditional because a conditional profile element may be implemented even if the  
1223 condition is not true.

1224 For any profile element designated as conditional exclusive, the condition shall be defined using one of  
1225 the mechanisms defined in 7.4.

1226 A CIM based discovery mechanism (see 7.5) shall be defined that enables clients — after having  
1227 determined that the subject profile is implemented — to determine whether the conditional exclusive  
1228 profile element is available. The discovery mechanism may be defined indirectly, such that the discovery  
1229 mechanism for one conditional exclusive profile element by means of conditional dependencies is  
1230 delegated to that of another profile element; particularly, this is the case with feature implementation  
1231 conditions (see 7.4.3) and feature discovery (see 7.15.6).

#### 1232 **7.3.6 Usage of the "prohibited" requirement level**

1233 A subject profile should designate a profile element as prohibited if it prohibits the implementation of the  
1234 designated profile element. Prohibiting the implementation of certain profile elements might be necessary  
1235 for example to suppress specific behaviors under certain conditions, or in cases where from a selection of  
1236 possible variants only one is to be implemented.

### 1237 **7.4 Definition of conditions**

1238 This subclause defines mechanisms for the definition of conditions. A condition determines whether a  
1239 conditional or conditional exclusive profile element must be implemented.

### 1240 7.4.1 General

1241 As defined in 7.3.4, profiles shall define a condition for any conditional or conditional exclusive elements.

1242 Profiles shall apply only the mechanisms defined in 7.4 defining such conditions. Subclauses 7.4.2 to  
1243 7.4.7 define basic types of conditions. Complex conditions may be expressed as combinations of basic  
1244 conditions using the Boolean operators AND, OR, NOT, XOR and IMPLIES.

1245 Some of these mechanisms are deprecated. New profiles and revisions of existing profiles should not use  
1246 such deprecated mechanisms.

1247 NOTE 1 Conditions control conditional implementation requirements. Conditions are resolved at implementation  
1248 time and are complied with by implementers as they implement conditional and conditional exclusive  
1249 elements in the case where the condition is true. Conditions themselves are not generally directly  
1250 observable by clients; however, the effect of implementing conditional elements is observable by clients.  
1251 Discovery mechanisms are CIM based mechanisms that are specifically designed to provide for the run  
1252 time discovery of optional, conditional or conditional exclusive profile elements; for details, see 7.5.

1253 NOTE 2 Conditions are not to be confused with implementation decisions made by profile implementers. A  
1254 condition does not need to be based on such decisions. For example, a condition may be tied to  
1255 circumstances in the type of managed environment addressed by an implementation, not leaving any room  
1256 for a decision to be made.

### 1257 7.4.2 Profile implementation condition

1258 A profile may specify a condition based on whether or not a referenced profile is implemented. This kind  
1259 of condition is called a *profile implementation condition*.

1260 A profile implementation conditional is True if the referenced profile is implemented; otherwise, a profile  
1261 implementation conditional is False.

1262 For example, an Example Fan profile might model fan management. This Example Fan profile might  
1263 require that the implementation of the *Associators()* operation for its adaptation of the CIM\_Fan class for  
1264 traversing to CIM\_Sensor instances representing attached fan speed sensors is conditional on the  
1265 implementation of an Example Sensors profile for those speed sensors. In this example, an  
1266 implementation decision is made at the level of implementing the Example Sensors profile. The profile  
1267 implementation conditional defined in the Example Fan profile determines the consequences of such  
1268 profile implementation for the elements adapted in the Example Fan profile.

1269 NOTE There is no restriction that the referenced profile needs to be implemented in the same WBEM server as  
1270 the referencing profile.

1271 NOTE Implementing a referenced profile for the purpose of conforming to a profile implementation condition in a  
1272 referencing profile is a design-time decision and is not to be confused with detecting profile  
1273 implementations at run-time. The latter is defined in [DSP1033](#).

### 1274 7.4.3 Feature implementation condition

1275 A profile may specify a condition based on the implementation of a feature (see 7.15). This kind of  
1276 condition is called a *feature implementation condition*.

1277 A feature implementation condition is True if the feature is implemented as part of a profile  
1278 implementation, without taking into account the granularity level of the feature; otherwise, a feature  
1279 implementation condition is False. For details about feature granularity levels, see 7.15.5.

1280 For example, an Example Fan profile might model fan management. This Example Fan profile might  
1281 define a "FanSpeedSensor" feature. Some elements adapted by the Example Fan profile might be  
1282 defined as conditional on the implementation of the feature. Likewise, an Example Sensors profile  
1283 modeling the use of sensors might be referenced by the Example Fan profile, on the condition that the  
1284 FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented. In this example, an implementation decision is made at the  
1285 level of implementing the feature. The feature implementation conditions defined in the Example Fan

1286 profile determine the consequences of implementing the feature, in this case the implementation of the  
1287 elements adapted by the Example Fan profile and related to fan speed sensing, and implementation of  
1288 the Example Sensors profile in the context of fan speed sensors.

1289 NOTE The way this example defines an implementation option in a profile is different from how the example  
1290 described in 7.4.2 defines it; in this case, there is no implementation difference between using a profile  
1291 implementation condition or a feature implementation condition. However, the use of a feature  
1292 implementation condition is preferred because it makes explicit a requirement that a set of related  
1293 elements be implemented as a unit. Additionally, the profile is required to provide a means of detecting  
1294 that a feature has been implemented; for details, see 7.15.6. This generally reduces the number of  
1295 variations in implementations and therefore the complexity of clients that must accommodate those  
1296 variations.

#### 1297 **7.4.4 Class adaptation implementation condition**

1298 A profile may specify a condition based on the implementation of a non-mandatory class adaptation (see  
1299 7.13). This kind of condition is called a *class adaptation implementation condition*.

1300 NOTE The decision to implement an optional class adaptation — or a conditional class adaptation in the case  
1301 where the condition is not true — is made by an implementer; consequently, requirements related to other  
1302 elements specified by a profile can be conditioned on the implementation of the class adaptation. A class  
1303 adaptation implementation condition is not necessarily directly observable by a client; for example,  
1304 consider the case where no instances of the class adaptation exist.

1305 A class adaptation implementation condition is True if the class adaptation is implemented; otherwise, a  
1306 class adaptation implementation condition is False.

1307 For example, the implementation of fan redundancy might be defined in an Example Fan profile such that  
1308 the adaptation of the CIM\_RedundancyGroup class is defined as optional, and the definitions of any other  
1309 profile elements related to fan redundancy would then be defined as conditional on the implementation of  
1310 the adaptation of the CIM\_RedundancyGroup class.

1311 NOTE In the example, the requirements for some related profile elements are conditioned on the implementation  
1312 of a class adaptation, in effect causing the related profile elements to be implemented if the decision to  
1313 implement the class adaptation is made initially; in this situation the definition of a feature along with  
1314 respective feature implementation conditions on the class adaptation and the related profile elements is  
1315 considered a better choice.

---

#### 1316 **DEPRECATED**

#### 1317 **7.4.5 Instance existence condition**

1318 Instance existence conditions are deprecated in favor of the discovery through identified or related  
1319 adaptation instances (see 7.5.2 and 7.5.3); for the rationale, see the "Deprecation notice" below.

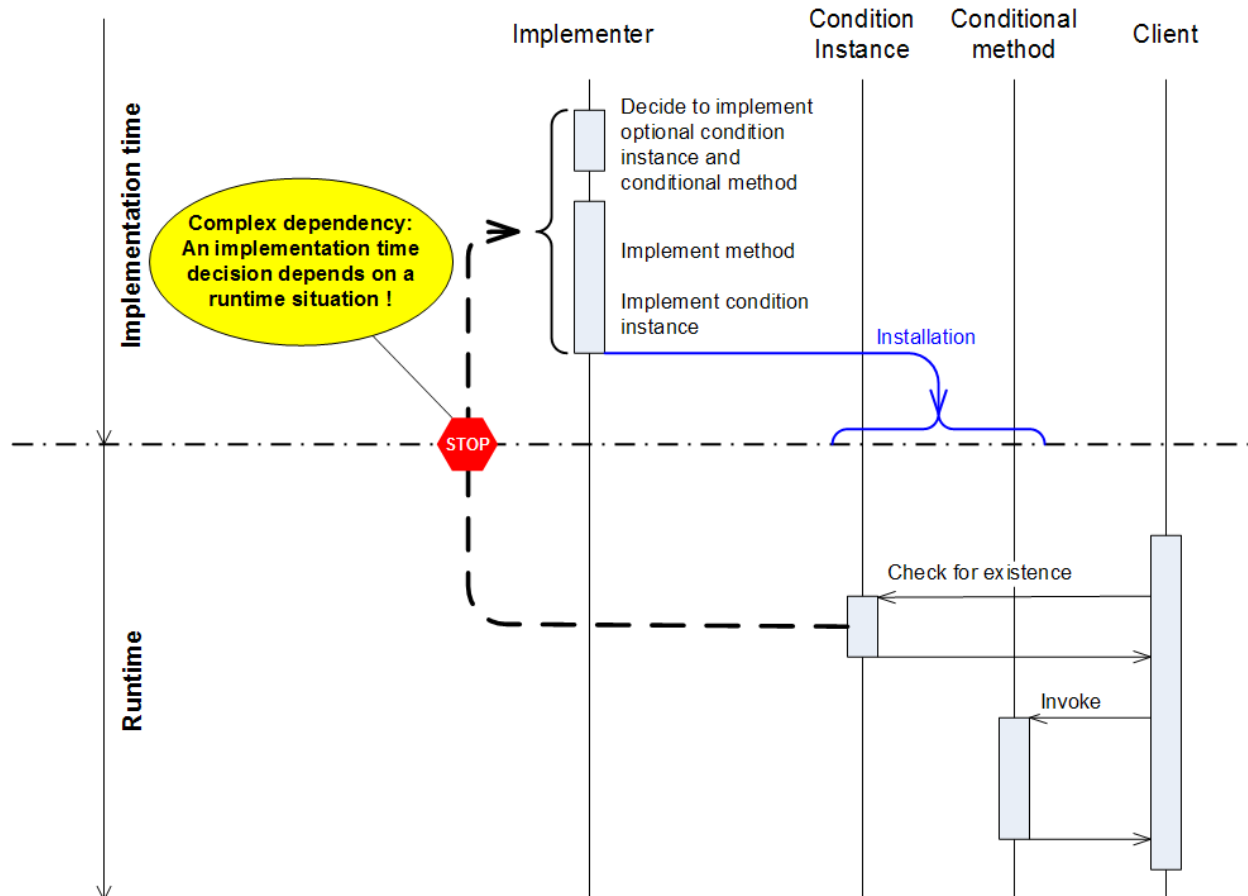
1320 A profile may specify a condition based on the existence of a particular CIM instance. This kind of  
1321 condition is called an *instance existence condition*.

1322 An instance existence condition is True if the CIM instance as defined by the profile exists; otherwise, the  
1323 instance existence condition is False. The profile shall define a discovery mechanism for the CIM  
1324 instance; for details, see 7.5.

1325 For example, a profile that optionally adapts a specialization of the CIM\_Service class that has several  
1326 domain specific service methods might state that the CIM\_HostedService association that models the  
1327 relationship between the service and the system hosting the service shall only be implemented if the  
1328 CIM\_Service instance exists.

1329 NOTE The concept of instance existence conditions is problematic because it implies that the implementation of  
1330 conditional profile elements (such as adaptations) depends on the existence of CIM instances. Thus a  
1331 design time decision (such as implementing an adaptation) depends on a situation that is the result of an

1332 implementation and is observable at runtime only (such as the existence of a CIM instance); consequently,  
 1333 as detailed in Figure 3, the determination of the condition requires the implementer to abstractly anticipate  
 1334 the runtime situation. In other words, the implementer who needs to make a design time decision (for  
 1335 example, implement the adaptation) would have to figure out potential runtime situations (for example, the  
 1336 existence of CIM instances) that are only the result of the implementation; this is considered a  
 1337 cumbersome and potentially error prone exercise.



1338  
 1339 **Figure 3 – Complexity when an implementation decision depends on a runtime element**

1340 **Deprecation notice:** Instance existence conditions are an unnecessary complication and indirection of  
 1341 the decision process for implementing a conditional or conditional exclusive element. New profiles and  
 1342 revisions of existing profiles should use feature implementation conditions rather than instance existence  
 1343 conditions.

1344 **NOTE** It is emphasized that the deprecation of instance existence conditions does not prohibit profiles from  
 1345 specifying the existence of instances as a means for clients to detect the result of design-time decisions.  
 1346 On the contrary, this guide requires profiles to define discovery mechanisms for the run time discovery of  
 1347 conditional or conditional exclusive profile elements (see 7.5). This significantly differs from instance  
 1348 existence conditions insofar as now the design-time decision (for example, the implementation of an  
 1349 optional feature) is made first, and as a consequence the implementation is required to provide discovery  
 1350 elements (such as a specific CIM instance) that indicate the implementation of the conditional or  
 1351 conditional exclusive element to clients.

1352 **DEPRECATED**

1353

---

1354 **DEPRECATED**

#### 1355 **7.4.6 Property value condition**

1356 Property value conditions are deprecated in favor of discovery through specific property values (see  
1357 7.5.4); for the rationale, see the "Deprecation notice" below.

1358 A profile may specify a condition based on the value of a property of a particular CIM instance. This kind  
1359 of condition is called a *property value* condition.

1360 A property value condition is True if the CIM instance exists and the values of one or more properties in  
1361 the instance match a pattern defined by the profile; otherwise, the property value condition is False.

1362 For example, a profile that adapts a specialization of the CIM\_Service class that defines several methods  
1363 might in addition adapt a specialization of the CIM\_Capabilities class that defines an array property and a  
1364 corresponding value set, where each element of the value set designates one of the methods from the  
1365 CIM\_Service class. Implementation of a particular method would be required if the corresponding value is  
1366 set as an element of the array property.

1367 **NOTE** The concept of property value conditions is problematic because it implies that the implementation of  
1368 conditional elements (such as adaptations) depends on values of properties in CIM instances. Thus a  
1369 design-time decision (such as implementing a class adaptation) depends on a situation that is the result of  
1370 an implementation and is observable at runtime only (such as a certain value of a property in a CIM  
1371 instance); consequently, similar to the situation detailed in Figure 3, the determination of the condition  
1372 requires the implementer to abstractly anticipate the runtime situation. In other words, the implementer  
1373 who needs to make the design-time decision (for example, implement the adaptation) would have to figure  
1374 out potential runtime situations (for example, property values in CIM instances) that are only the result of  
1375 an implementation; this is considered a cumbersome and potentially error-prone exercise.

1376 **Deprecation notice:** Property value conditions are an unnecessary complication and indirection of the  
1377 decision process for implementing a conditional or conditional exclusive element. New profiles and  
1378 revisions of existing profiles should use feature implementation conditions rather than property value  
1379 conditions.

1380 **NOTE** It is emphasized that the deprecation of property value conditions does not prohibit profiles from specifying  
1381 property values as a means for clients to detect the result of design time decisions. On the contrary, this  
1382 guide requires profiles to define discovery mechanisms for the run time discovery of conditional or  
1383 conditional exclusive profile elements (see 7.5). This significantly differs from property value conditions  
1384 insofar as now the design time decision (for example, the implementation of an optional class adaptation)  
1385 is made first, and as a consequence the implementation is required to provide discovery elements (such  
1386 as a specific property value in a CIM instance) that enable clients to detect the implementation of the  
1387 conditional or conditional exclusive element.

1388 **DEPRECATED**

---

#### 1389 **7.4.7 Managed environment condition**

1390 A profile may specify a condition based on circumstances in the managed environment. This kind of  
1391 condition is called a *managed environment condition*.

1392 Managed environment conditions are specified in profiles using plain text that refers to the managed  
1393 environment and its managed object types.

1394 A managed environment condition is True if the conditions specified in the text are True for the particular  
1395 type of managed environment for which the profile is implemented; otherwise, the managed environment  
1396 condition is False.

1397 For example, a profile addressing the management domain of storage host bus adapters might adapt the  
1398 CIM\_FCPort class modeling fiber channel host SCSI initiator ports. The profile might state that the

1399 implementation of its adaptations of the CIM\_AlarmDevice class and of the CIM\_AssociatedAlarm  
1400 association are conditional on the condition that the type of managed environment for which the profile is  
1401 implemented provides a client callable interface to blink an LED for those fiber channel ports that are  
1402 represented by instances of the CIM\_FCPort class.

1403 NOTE 1 Managed environment conditions allow the formulation of conditions in profiles such that an  
1404 implementation of the profile is required to implement the conditional element only if respective means are  
1405 available to the implementation in the particular type of managed environment. In the example above, the  
1406 implementation of the CIM\_AlarmDevice class makes sense only if the implementation has the means to  
1407 blink the LEDs.

1408 NOTE 2 Of course managed environment conditions are only testable using white box testing where the test code  
1409 also has access to specific means to test the managed environment condition. Ideally these means would  
1410 be different from those used by a profile implementation.

## 1411 7.5 Discovery mechanisms

### 1412 7.5.1 General

1413 Discovery mechanisms enable clients to discover whether optional, conditional or conditional exclusive  
1414 profile elements are implemented, or are available in context of other profile elements. A discovery  
1415 mechanism is a CIM based mechanism that yields a Boolean result.

1416 It is highly recommended that profiles define discovery mechanisms for optional (see 7.3.3), conditional  
1417 (see 7.3.4) or conditional exclusive (see 7.3.5) profile elements.

### 1418 7.5.2 Discovery through an identified adaptation instance

1419 For this discovery mechanism the subject profile needs to define an identification for a particular  
1420 adaptation instance, for example by requiring specific property values. If an instance matching the profile  
1421 defined identification exists, the discovery mechanism yields True, otherwise False.

1422 An example is an instance of an adaptation of the CIM\_RegisteredProfile class that represents the  
1423 registration of a subject profile (for details on profile registration, see [DSP1033](#)). Clients can discover that  
1424 instance by filtering existing instances for values of the identification properties defined by the subject  
1425 profile, such as the RegisteredName, RegisteredOrganization and RegisteredVersion properties.

### 1426 7.5.3 Discovery through a related adaptation instance

1427 For this discovery mechanism the subject profile needs to define an association path from a subject  
1428 adaptation instance (in context of which the discoverable implementation variant is available) to a related  
1429 adaptation instance. If the related instance is reachable by traversing the defined association path from  
1430 the subject adaptation instance, the discovery mechanism yields True, otherwise False. Note that the  
1431 discoverable implementation variant does not necessarily have to be available in direct context of the  
1432 subject adaptation instance itself, but instead may apply to elements that are related to the subject  
1433 adaptation instance.

1434 For example, an Example Port profile could define a PortController adaptation of the CIM\_PortController  
1435 class modeling port controllers, a PortErrorLED adaptation of the CIM\_AlarmDevice class modeling a  
1436 blinkable LED that is capable of signaling an error or a port controller, and an AssociatedLED adaptation  
1437 of the CIM\_AssociatedAlarm association modeling the relationship between a port controller and its error  
1438 indication LED. Clients can discover whether optional error indication LEDs are installed for a particular  
1439 port controller by resolving the CIM\_AssociatedAlarm association, starting from the PortController  
1440 instance representing that port controller, for CIM\_AlarmDevice instances; if such an instance exists, a  
1441 client can rely on that optional error indicator LEDs are installed for the port controller.

#### 1442 7.5.4 Implementation discovery through specific property values

1443 This discovery mechanism is applicable for a subject instance itself, or as extension to a discovery  
1444 mechanisms for an identified instance or a related instance. For such instances, the profile defines  
1445 specific property values; only if the instance exists and exhibits these specific property values, the  
1446 discovery mechanism yields True, otherwise it yields False.

1447 For example, an Example Fan profile might define a FanCapabilities adaptation of the  
1448 CIM\_EnabledLogicalElementCapabilities class, and associate that with the Fan adaptation by means of  
1449 an adaptation of the CIM\_ElementCapabilities association. The Example Fan profile might further define  
1450 that the value of the ElementNameEditSupported property shall have the value True if the modification of  
1451 the ElementName property in the related Fan instance is implemented. Thus a client can - by inspecting  
1452 the value of the ElementNameEditSupported property in a FanCapabilities instance associated with a Fan  
1453 instance – discover that the modification of the ElementName property in the Fan instance is  
1454 implemented.

### 1455 7.6 Definition of the profile identification

1456 This subclause defines the elements of a profile identification.

#### 1457 7.6.1 General

1458 A profile shall uniquely identify itself through a registered profile name (see 7.6.2), version (see 7.6.3),  
1459 and organization (see 7.6.4).

1460 NOTE Profile identification identifies a specific version of a profile, not that of a profile implementation. Within one  
1461 WBEM server there may be multiple profile implementations of the same profile version.

#### 1462 7.6.2 Registered profile name

1463 The registered profile name should provide end-user recognition and should not include CIM class  
1464 names.

1465 The registered profile name shall be unique within the defining organization.

1466 The registered profile name shall not be changed in any future version of the profile.

1467 The registered profile name shall not include the word "profile". However, in normal profile text references  
1468 to other profiles should append the word "profile" to the registered profile name. For example, a profile  
1469 referencing another profile whose value of the registered profile name attribute is "System Virtualization"  
1470 would use text such as "If the System Virtualization profile (see DSP1042) is implemented, then ...".

1471 NOTE 1 This rule is for references to profiles in normal profile text. It is to be distinguished from the rules for  
1472 referencing *specification documents* (including profile specification documents), as established by the  
1473 "[Document conventions](#)" of this guide. References to specification documents typically only appear in the  
1474 "Normative references" and in the "Bibliography" clauses of a profile. For example, when referring to the  
1475 profile specification document that contains the definition of version 1.0 of the System Virtualization profile  
1476 and that is titled "System Virtualization Profile", that profile specification document would have to be  
1477 referenced as DMTF DSP1042, *System Virtualization Profile 1.0* in the "Normative references" clause.  
1478 It is important to realize that the definition of a profile is different from a document that contains that  
1479 definition. For example, the definition of the System Virtualization profile could be contained in the  
1480 document with the number DMTF DSP1042 in the form of a profile specification. Likewise, it could be  
1481 contained in the document with the number DMTF DSP6042 in the form of a machine readable profile.

1482 NOTE 2 A helpful convention applied by many profile specification documents (and by this guide) when referring to  
1483 a profile in normal text is appending a phrase such as "(see <docnum>)" after a first reference to a profile  
1484 within a subclause, where <docnum> is an internal hyperlink. The hyperlink is named as the document  
1485 number of the referenced document, and links to the entry in the "Normative references" clause that refers  
1486 to the document that contains the definition of the referenced profile.



### 1487 **7.6.3 Registered profile version**

1488 The registered profile version shall be the full version of the subject profile. The version shall be defined  
1489 following the rules for versioning DMTF specifications defined in [DSP4014](#).

1490 DMTF Standard versions of a profile shall specify the major version identifier, the minor version identifier  
1491 and the update identifier for the registered profile version. Work-in-progress versions of a profile should in  
1492 addition specify the draft level in order to enable the distinction of implementation of work-in-progress  
1493 versions from DMTF Standard versions.

### 1494 **7.6.4 Registered organization name**

1495 The registered organization name shall be the name of the organization that is publishing the profile. For  
1496 profiles that are published by DMTF, the registered organization name shall be "DMTF".

### 1497 **7.6.5 Organizational contact**

1498 A profile shall identify the organizational unit that is the contact for the profile. For profiles owned by  
1499 DMTF, details are defined in [DSP4014](#).

## 1500 **7.7 Definition of schema references**

1501 This subclause defines the elements of a reference to a schema.

### 1502 **7.7.1 General**

1503 A profile shall reference each schema that defines classes adapted by the profile. Each schema  
1504 reference shall state the schema name (see 7.7.3), the schema version (see 7.7.2), and the schema  
1505 organization (see 7.7.4), unless default values apply.

### 1506 **7.7.2 Schema version**

1507 The schema version shall be stated with the major version identifier, the minor version identifier and, if  
1508 needed, the update identifier. The schema version should refer to the earliest version of the schema that  
1509 meets the requirements of the profile. Regardless of whether or not an update identifier is stated, the  
1510 latest published update version with the stated major and minor version identifier is referenced, as  
1511 defined in [DSP4014](#); in other words, while an update identifier identifies the minimally required update  
1512 version, it shall be interpreted as referring to the latest update version published after the minimally  
1513 required update version.

### 1514 **7.7.3 Schema name**

1515 The schema name shall refer to the schema by the name that the owning organization assigned to the  
1516 schema. The specification of this attribute is optional only in the case where only one schema is  
1517 referenced; if not specified in this case, the default schema name is "CIM".

### 1518 **7.7.4 Schema organization**

1519 The schema organization shall refer to the organization that owns the schema. The specification of this  
1520 attribute is optional only in the case where only one schema organization is referenced; if not specified in  
1521 this case, the default schema organization is "DMTF".

### 1522 **7.7.5 Schema experimental flag**

1523 Profiles may reference schemas that are designated as experimental by the organization that defines the  
1524 schema. A reference to an experimental schema shall be marked as experimental.

1525 NOTE See 7.18 for rules for the specification of experimental content.

## 1526 7.8 Definition of profile categories

### 1527 7.8.1 General

1528 As pointed out in 6.2, complex management domains typically can be subdivided into smaller  
1529 management domains where each subdomain narrows down the area of work or field of activity. In order  
1530 to reflect this subdivision, two categories of profiles are defined: Autonomous profiles and component  
1531 profiles.

### 1532 7.8.2 Autonomous profiles

1533 An autonomous profile defines a management interface for an autonomous and self-contained  
1534 management domain. An autonomous profile may be defined without relationships to other profiles  
1535 (standalone) or may be defined with relationships to other profiles that as a set define a management  
1536 interface for a complete management domain.

### 1537 7.8.3 Component profiles

1538 A component profile defines a management interface of a subset or special aspect of a management  
1539 domain. In most cases it is possible and desirable to specify a component profile independent of its use in  
1540 the context of a particular referencing profile, enabling reuse of the component profile in the context of  
1541 many possible referencing profiles.

1542 For example, an autonomous profile addressing the management domain of systems might reference a  
1543 component profile for the purpose of addressing the management domain of network ports in systems.  
1544 The same component profile might be referenced by another autonomous profile that addresses the  
1545 management domain of network switches, in this case for the purpose of addressing the management  
1546 domain of switch ports.

## 1547 7.9 Definition of profile relationships

### 1548 7.9.1 Definition of profile references

#### 1549 7.9.1.1 General

1550 A profile reference is a named profile element within the referencing profile; the rules defined in 7.2.2  
1551 apply. A profile reference references a profile by stating the type of the profile reference (see 7.9.1.2), and  
1552 by identifying the minimally required version of the referenced profile (see 7.9.1.3). In addition, the use of  
1553 the referenced profile in the context of the referencing profile should be described.

1554 A profile reference establishes either profile derivation or a profile usage.

1555 Profile derivation establishes another profile as a base profile of the subject profile; profile derivation is  
1556 detailed in 7.9.2.

1557 A profile usage establishes a use of the referenced profile within the context of the referencing profile. It is  
1558 possible that a subject profile defines multiple usages of a particular profile; in this case the subject profile  
1559 references that profile multiple times, each time for a separate use. For example, an Example Fan profile  
1560 addressing the management domain of fans in systems could reference an Example Sensors profile for  
1561 the representation of sensors monitoring fan speed and for temperature sensors monitoring the  
1562 temperature of cooled elements.

1563 Scoping is a refinement of a profile usage that in addition requires the definition of specific adaptations  
1564 and dependencies between them in the referencing profile as well as in the referenced profile; for details,  
1565 see 7.9.3.

1566 A profile shall not reference its previous versions.

1567 The definition of cyclic profile references is allowed for profile usages; however, it is prohibited for profile  
1568 derivation. Additional restrictions apply in context of cyclic references between profiles. For example, it is  
1569 not possible to define cyclic relationships between adaptations; for details, see 7.13.2.1.

1570 An example of cyclic references between profiles is a profile A that defines a mandatory reference to a  
1571 profile B, and that profile B defines a mandatory reference back to profile A. Another example is an  
1572 autonomous profile that defines a profile reference to each of its component profiles, and each  
1573 component profile refers back to the autonomous profile.

1574 NOTE Generally, component profiles do not reference their scoping profile.

### 1575 7.9.1.2 Types of profile references

1576 The types of profile references are defined as follows:

- 1577 • **Derivation**

1578 A derivation profile reference indicates that the definitions of the referenced profile are the base  
1579 for the referencing profile, as detailed in 7.9.2. In this case, the referenced profile is called a  
1580 base profile, and the referencing profile is termed a derived profile. From a client point of view, a  
1581 derived profile is substitutable for a base profile. As required in 7.9.2, at most one direct base  
1582 profile shall be established per subject profile.

1583 All subsequent types of profile references establish profile usages:

- 1584 • **Mandatory**

1585 A mandatory profile usage indicates that the definitions of the referenced profile apply in the  
1586 context established by the referencing profile. In this case, the referenced profile is termed a  
1587 mandatory profile of the referencing profile.

- 1588 • **Conditional**

1589 A conditional profile usage indicates that the definitions of the referenced profile under specified  
1590 conditions apply in the context of the referencing profile. In this case, the referenced profile is  
1591 termed a conditional profile of the referencing profile.

- 1592 • **Conditional exclusive**

1593 A conditional exclusive profile usage indicates that the definitions of the referenced profile under  
1594 specified conditions apply in the context of the referencing profile, and shall not apply if the  
1595 specified conditions do not apply. In this case, the referenced profile is termed a conditional  
1596 exclusive profile of the referencing profile.

- 1597 • **Optional**

1598 An optional profile usage indicates that the definitions of the referenced profile optionally apply  
1599 in the context of the referencing profile, as far as elements affected by these definitions are  
1600 selected by an implementer. In this case, the referenced profile is termed an optional profile of  
1601 the referencing profile.

1602 A referencing profile shall indicate the type of profile reference by using the respective keyword, as  
1603 designated in **bold face** in the previous list.

1604 As a consequence of a profile reference, the definitions and requirements of the referenced profiles  
1605 become part of the set of definitions and requirements that are effective for the referencing profile;  
1606 however, this applies in different ways for profile derivation as opposed to profile usages. The process of  
1607 how to determine the definitions and requirements that effectively apply for an implementation  
1608 implementing a set of profiles are detailed in clause 9.

### 1609 7.9.1.3 Identification of the minimally required version of a referenced profile

1610 The identification of the minimally required version of a referenced profile shall be stated with all of the  
1611 following:

- 1612 • the registered profile name of the referenced profile (see 7.6.2)
- 1613 • the major version identifier, the minor version identifier and optionally the update identifier of the  
1614 registered profile version of the referenced profile (see 7.6.3). The update identifier should only  
1615 be used in cases where dependencies on the referenced update version exist that are not  
1616 already addressed by the minor version.
- 1617 • the registered organization (see 7.6.4) of the referenced profile

1618 Regardless of whether an update identifier is stated, the latest published update version with the stated  
1619 major and minor version identifier is referenced; in other words, while an update identifier identifies the  
1620 minimally required update version, it shall be interpreted as referring to the latest update version  
1621 published after the minimally required update version. For further details, see [DSP4014](#).

### 1622 7.9.1.4 Prohibition of the relaxation of requirements

1623 A referencing profile shall not redefine mandatory definitions of referenced profiles as conditional or  
1624 optional and shall not redefine conditional definitions of a referenced profile as optional.

1625 A referencing profile shall not remove any constraints established by its referenced profiles.

### 1626 7.9.1.5 Rules for the repetition of content from referenced profiles

1627 A referencing profile shall not repeat content of its referenced profiles unless it establishes additional  
1628 constraints. Even in this case repetitions should be avoided unless necessary to establish a context for  
1629 the additional constraints.

1630 NOTE For rules on the repetition of schema content as part of property requirements, see 7.13.2.8.3.

### 1631 7.9.1.6 Rules for derived adaptations

1632 A profile may define adaptations based on adaptations defined in referenced profiles; for details, see  
1633 7.13.2.1 and 7.13.2.4.

1634 In this case the profile relationships to each profile defining one or more base adaptations shall be  
1635 defined in compliance with the following rules:

- 1636 • If mandatory base adaptations are defined, the relationship to each referenced profile defining a  
1637 mandatory base adaptation shall be mandatory or derivation.
- 1638 • If conditional base adaptations are defined, the relationship to each referenced profile defining a  
1639 conditional base adaptation shall be mandatory, derivation, conditional, or conditional exclusive.  
1640 In the case of conditional or conditional exclusive, the condition shall be at least the conjunction  
1641 of all individual conditions, or stronger.

## 1642 7.9.2 Definition of profile derivation

### 1643 7.9.2.1 General

1644 Subclause 7.9.2 defines rules that ensure that a client that exploits the management interface defined by  
1645 a base profile can likewise interact through that management interface with profile implementations of the  
1646 base profile or with those of derived profiles.

---

**1647 DEPRECATED**

1648 Version 1.0 of this guide defined the term *profile specialization*. This term was deprecated and replaced  
1649 by *profile derivation*, because profile specialization does not address the possible cases of expanding the  
1650 management domain addressed by and extending the management interface defined by the base profile.

**1651 DEPRECATED**

---

1652 A derived profile should be based on exactly one *direct* base profile.

1653 New derived profiles written in conformance to this guide shall be based on exactly one direct base  
1654 profile. Minor revisions of existing profiles written in conformance with version 1.0 of this guide that define  
1655 more than base profile in the original profile may retain defining more than one direct base profile.

---

**1656 DEPRECATED**

1657 Version 1.0 of this guide allowed multiple inheritance, such that a derived profile could be directly based  
1658 on more than one profile. This is deprecated because it enables the definition of derived profiles while not  
1659 ensuring polymorphism; that is, it is not ensured that a client written against the definition of any base  
1660 profile could interact with the profile implementation of the derived profile. Furthermore, there are no rules  
1661 with respect to the merge of implementation requirements resulting from definitions of the base profiles  
1662 and the derived profiles, and there are no rules that prohibited a derived profile from being based on a set  
1663 of base profiles with contradicting requirements.

**1664 DEPRECATED**

---

1665 In this guide, when referring to more than one base profile, this means the direct base profile and possible  
1666 indirect base profiles. This is because profile derivation may be applied at more than one level, such that  
1667 a base profile likewise may be a derived profile. For example, a profile A may be based on a profile B,  
1668 and profile B may be based on profile C, and so forth. Consequently a derived profile — while having  
1669 exactly one *direct* base profile — can have additional *indirect* base profiles.

1670 A derived profile inherits definitions of all its (direct or indirect) base profiles, as follows:

- 1671 • management domain context
- 1672 • schema references
- 1673 • features
- 1674 • profile references
- 1675 • registry references
- 1676 • adaptations (including their property requirements, method requirements, operation  
1677 requirements and metric requirements)
- 1678 • use cases

1679 Other definitions of base profiles are not inherited by a derived profile and need to be exclusively defined  
1680 by the derived profile; in some of these cases, definitions in 7.9.2 constrain the possible choices of a  
1681 derived profile.

1682 **NOTE** Special implementation requirements apply for derived profiles. For example, all implementation  
1683 requirements defined by a derived profile need to be merged with those of its base profiles; for details, see  
1684 clause 9.

**1685 7.9.2.2 Propagation of the management domain**

1686 A derived profile may address a management domain that may be restricted, expanded or unchanged  
1687 with respect to the management domains addressed by its (direct or indirect) base profiles. For example,  
1688 if a base profile applies to the management domain of network port management, a derived profile may  
1689 restrict that to the management of Ethernet network ports.

1690 The management interface defined by base profiles completely becomes a part of the interface defined  
1691 by the derived profile for its management domain. This rule ensures that clients exploiting the  
1692 management interface as defined by a base profile can interact with a profile implementation of a derived  
1693 profile to the same extent as with a profile implementation of the base profile.

1694 A derived profile may define extensions beyond the management interface defined by base profiles.

**1695 7.9.2.3 Propagation of constraints**

1696 A derived profile inherits constraints on profile elements from its (direct or indirect) base profiles. More  
1697 specifically, if profile elements defined in base profiles are not redefined in the derived profile, the  
1698 definitions of the base profiles apply without changes. Also, if a derived profile redefines profile elements  
1699 defined in its base profiles, the constraints defined in the base profiles apply for the redefined profile  
1700 elements as stated in the base profiles and without being restated by the derived profile.

1701 A derived profile may specify additional constraints; in this case, the additional constraints shall not  
1702 violate the inherited constraints.

1703 The effects of this rule are different with respect to data sent or received by an implementation. For  
1704 example, if a base profile requires an output parameter to have only the values "4", "5", or "6", definitions  
1705 in the derived profile are restricted to this value set, but are allowed to reduce that to any subset, such as  
1706 "4" and "6". However, in the case of an input parameter, the derived profile is not allowed to further  
1707 reduce the value set, because a client written against the base profile may use all values as defined by  
1708 the base profile.

1709 Consequently, there are rules for extending or reducing the value set for input/output parameters and  
1710 return values in a derived profile; see 7.13.3.2.2. Likewise, this applies to properties that are readable and  
1711 writable.

1712 NOTE A profile implementation of a derived profile is required to satisfy the requirements of all its (direct and  
1713 indirect) base profiles. Thus, a client written against the management interface defined by a base profile  
1714 also works with a profile implementation of a derived profile. Implementation requirements are detailed in  
1715 clause 9.

**1716 7.9.2.4 Propagation of requirement levels**

1717 A derived profile inherits profile elements with the same requirement level as that defined by its (direct or  
1718 indirect) base profiles; this means that profile elements defined in base profiles are considered part of a  
1719 derived profile with the same requirement level, without requiring a new definition in the derived profile.

1720 A derived profile may redefine optional profile elements of its base profiles as conditional, mandatory or  
1721 prohibited, and may redefine conditional profile elements of its base profiles as mandatory.

1722 A derived profile may redefine conditional profile elements of its base profiles as conditional. In this case,  
1723 the condition in the derived profile shall be satisfied if the condition in the base profile is satisfied.

1724 NOTE For example, consider a base profile that requires a conditional profile element if either the X feature or the  
1725 Y feature is implemented; in this case a derived profile would not be allowed to narrow the condition such  
1726 that it would require the conditional profile element only if the X feature is implemented. The reason is that  
1727 a client of the base profile would expect the conditional profile element to be present also in the case  
1728 where the Y feature is implemented.

**1729 7.9.2.5 Definition of schema references**

1730 A derived profile shall reference each schema that defines classes adapted by the profile; see 7.7 for a  
1731 definition of the elements of schema references.

1732 A derived profile may introduce new schema references.

1733 The version of a referenced schema in a derived profile shall not be less recent than the most recent  
1734 version of that schema in any base profile. A derived profile may refine a schema reference of a base  
1735 profile by requiring a more recent version of the referenced schema.

**1736 7.9.2.6 Propagation of the central and scoping class adaptations**

1737 The scoping class adaptation of a derived profile shall be based on the scoping class adaptation of its  
1738 direct base profile. For the adapted class and for other base adaptations the provisions of 7.13.2.1 apply.

1739 The central class adaptation of a derived profile shall be based on the central class adaptation of its direct  
1740 base profile. For the adapted class and for other base adaptations the provisions of 7.13.2.1 apply.

**1741 7.9.2.7 Propagation of profile references**

1742 A derived profile inherits all profile references (see 7.9.1) defined by its (direct or indirect) base profiles;  
1743 this also applies to the names of the profile references.

1744 A derived profile may introduce new profile references.

1745 A derived profile may override a profile reference made in a base profile with a profile reference that  
1746 references a profile derived from the profile referenced by the base profile. An overriding profile reference  
1747 defined in a derived profile shall state the same profile reference name as that used by the profile  
1748 reference defined in the base profile; in effect, the use of the same profile reference name establishes the  
1749 override.

**1750 7.9.2.8 Propagation of registry references**

1751 A derived profile inherits all registry references (see 7.12) defined by its (direct or indirect) base profiles;  
1752 this also applies to the names of the registry references.

1753 A derived profile may introduce new registry references.

1754 A derived profile may override registry references made in base profiles with registry references that  
1755 reference compatible registries. New minor or update versions of the originally referenced registry version  
1756 are always compatible. New major versions of the originally referenced registry version and different  
1757 registries are compatible to the originally referenced registry version if all registry elements required by  
1758 the base profile(s) are compatibly defined in that registry version. An overriding registry reference defined  
1759 in a derived profile shall state the same registry reference name as that used by the registry reference  
1760 defined in the base profile; in effect, the use of the same registry reference name establishes the  
1761 override.

**1762 7.9.2.9 Propagation of features**

1763 A derived profile inherits all features (see 7.15) defined by its (direct or indirect) base profiles; this also  
1764 applies to the names of the features.

1765 A derived profile may introduce new features.

1766 If the name of a feature defined by a derived profile is identical to the name of a feature defined in one of  
1767 its base profiles, the feature defined by the derived profile shall be a refinement of the feature defined in  
1768 the base profile.

1769 A derived profile may refine features defined in base profiles. For a refined feature it is required that the  
1770 set of definitions conditional on the refined feature is a superset of the set of definitions conditional on the  
1771 original feature, that is, the refined feature requires at least the definitions of the original feature, but may  
1772 require more definitions. An overriding feature defined in a derived profile shall state the same name as  
1773 that used by the feature defined in the base profile; in effect, the use of the same name establishes the  
1774 override.

#### 1775 **7.9.2.10 Propagation of adaptations**

1776 A derived profile inherits adaptations (see 7.13) defined by its (direct or indirect) base profiles in the  
1777 following two cases:

1778 **Case A** : The derived profile defines a new adaptation that is based on one or more adaptations  
1779 defined in its base profiles. In this case, the rules for basing an adaptation on other adaptations as  
1780 defined in 7.13.2.1 apply. The name of the adaptation defined by the derived profile may differ from  
1781 the name of the adaptation defined by the base profile.

1782 For example, an Example Ethernet Port profile may define an EthernetPort adaptation of the  
1783 CIM\_EthernetPort class for the representation of Ethernet ports that is based on a NetworkPort  
1784 adaptation of the CIM\_NetworkPort class that is defined by a base Example Network Port profile.

1785 **Case B** : Adaptations defined by base profiles not referenced as a base adaptation of one of the  
1786 adaptations defined by the derived profile are propagated without changes into the derived profile,  
1787 including references to properties, methods, and operations. The adaptation name defined by the  
1788 base profile becomes an adaptation name of the derived profile. If naming conflicts result from this  
1789 rule, they shall be resolved by the derived profile through the application of case A. A not apparent  
1790 source for naming conflicts is the case where a new release of a base profile defined an adaptation  
1791 with a name in use by an already existing derived profile.

1792 A derived profile may define new adaptations in addition to those defined by its base profiles.

#### 1793 **7.9.2.11 Propagation of state descriptions and use cases**

1794 A derived profile inherits all state descriptions (see 7.16.2) and use cases (see 7.16) defined by its (direct  
1795 or indirect) base profiles. A derived profile may introduce new state descriptions and use cases.

1796 A derived profile may refine and extend state descriptions and use cases defined in base profiles. A  
1797 refinement replaces the use of some adaptations defined in base profiles in with that of respective derived  
1798 adaptations defined in the subject profile. An extension of a use case adds additional steps. An extension  
1799 of a state description adds additional adaptation instances. A refinement or extension of a state  
1800 description or use case defined in a derived profile shall state the same name as that used by the state  
1801 description or use case defined in the base profile; in effect, the use of the same name establishes the  
1802 refinement or extension.

### 1803 **7.9.3 Definition of scoping relationships**

#### 1804 **7.9.3.1 General**

1805 Scoping is a refinement of profile usage (see 7.9.1) that optimizes the conformance advertisement of  
1806 component profile implementations by reducing the number of required CIM\_ElementConformsToProfile  
1807 association instances; for details, see 7.14 and [DSP1033](#).

1808 Four elements contribute to defining a scoping relationship:

- 1809 • The central class adaptation (see 7.9.3.2) defined by the used profile
- 1810 • The scoping class adaptation (see 7.9.3.3) defined by the used profile



- 1811 • The scoping path (see 7.9.3.4) defined by the used profile
- 1812 • The central class adaptation (see 7.9.3.2) defined by the referencing profile

1813 A scoping relationship is established with a profile usage if the central class adaptation defined by the  
1814 referencing profile is based on (see 7.13.2.1) the scoping class adaptation defined by the used profile.

1815 For example, an Example Fan profile might define a FanSystem adaptation of the CIM\_System class as  
1816 its scoping class adaptation, and an Example Computer System profile might define its ComputerSystem  
1817 adaptation of the CIM\_ComputerSystem class as the central class adaptation, and base it on the  
1818 FanSystem adaptation of the Example Fan profile. In this case the Example Computer System profile  
1819 defines a scoping relationship to the Example Fan profile, because the central class adaptation of the  
1820 referencing profile is based on the scoping class adaptation of the used profile.

1821 Note that not every profile usage implies a scoping relationship; a scoping relationship is only defined if  
1822 the central class adaptation of the referencing profile is based on the scoping class adaptation of the used  
1823 profile. For example, the Example Fan profile might reference an Example Sensors profile that defines a  
1824 SensorSystem adaptation of the CIM\_System class as its scoping class adaptation; in this case the  
1825 Example Fan profile does not (and cannot for class compatibility reasons; see 7.13.2.1) define its central  
1826 class adaptation based on the scoping class adaptation of the Example Sensors profile.

### 1827 **7.9.3.2 Central class adaptation**

1828 A profile shall designate exactly one mandatory class adaptation as the central class adaptation.

1829 For requirements relating to profile registration, see 7.14.

1830 The central class adaptation is the focal point of a subject profile. It should model the central managed  
1831 object type in the management domain that is addressed by the subject profile.

### 1832 **7.9.3.3 Scoping class adaptation**

1833 A component profile (see 7.8.3) shall designate exactly one mandatory class adaptation as the scoping  
1834 class adaptation. In this case, the scoping class adaptation shall be different from the designated central  
1835 class adaptation (see 7.9.3.2).

1836 An autonomous profile (see 7.8.2) shall either not designate a scoping class adaptation, or shall  
1837 designate the same class adaptation as both the central class adaptation (see 7.9.3.2) and the scoping  
1838 class adaptation.

1839 For requirements relating to profile registration, see 7.14.

1840 The scoping class adaptation provides an external attach point for scoping profiles. A scoping profile may  
1841 connect to that attach point by defining its central class adaptation based on the scoping class adaptation  
1842 defined in used profiles.

### 1843 **7.9.3.4 Scoping path**

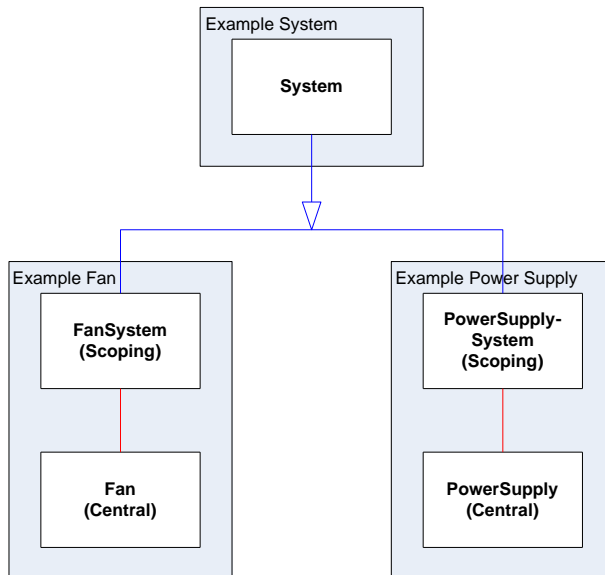
1844 A scoping path is an association traversal path defined by the subject profile connecting its central class  
1845 adaptation with its scoping class adaptation.

1846 Each component profile shall define a scoping path. The scoping path shall be specified by a set of  
1847 adaptations of associations and ordinary classes that are defined by the subject profile. The scoping path  
1848 shall enable bi-directional navigation between instances of the central class adaptation and instances of  
1849 the scoping class adaptation.

### 1850 **7.9.3.5 Examples of scoping relationships**

- 1851 • Autonomous profile with optional component profiles

1852 Embedded control systems optionally include management interfaces for elements such as fans  
 1853 or power supplies. In this case, the primary management interface addressing the core  
 1854 functionality of the control systems would be defined in the autonomous profile, whereas the  
 1855 secondary management interfaces addressing the functionality of the fan and power supply  
 1856 elements would be defined in separate component profiles. This is shown in Figure 4.



1857  
 1858 **Figure 4 – Autonomous profile with optional component profiles**

- 1859 • Multiple autonomous profiles sharing component profiles

1860 Disk arrays and volume managers provide similar RAID virtualization capabilities from a device  
 1861 of host-resident software. In this case, a RAID virtualization component profile could be  
 1862 referenced (shared) by an Array (external virtualization hardware) autonomous profile, and by a  
 1863 Volume Manager (host-resident virtualization software) autonomous profile.

- 1864 • Referenced component profiles, scoped to the same autonomous profile

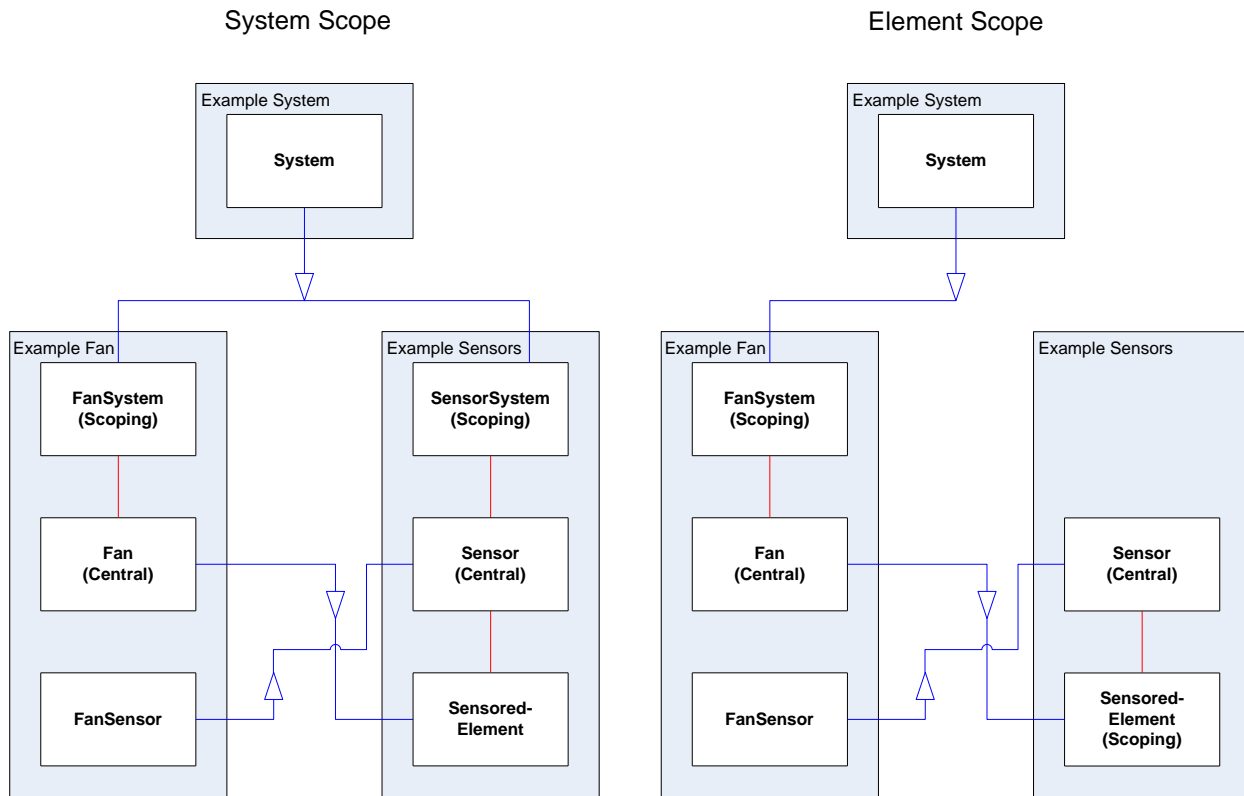
1865 Many types of systems include batteries — sometimes batteries are configured in redundant  
 1866 sets. This could be modeled as a Battery component profile with a separate, optional Battery  
 1867 Redundancy component profile. Elements of component profiles are scoped to a System  
 1868 instance defined in the context of an autonomous profile in the scoping hierarchy.

- 1869 • Scoping between component profiles

1870 Figure 5 shows two variants of an Example Fan profile referencing an Example Sensors profile:

  - 1871 – The left side of Figure 5 shows the example with a scoping relationship established by an  
 1872 autonomous Example System profile for both an Example Fan and an Example Sensors  
 1873 profile by basing the Example System profile's System adaptation on both the FanSystem  
 1874 adaptation of the Example Fan profile and the SensorSystem adaptation of the Example  
 1875 Sensors profile.
  - 1876 – The right side of Figure 5 shows a variant of this example with the scoping relationship for  
 1877 the Example Sensors profile established by the Example Fan profile; in this case the  
 1878 Example Fan profile bases its (central) Fan adaptation on the (scoping) SensoredElement  
 1879 adaptation of the Example Sensors profile, thereby establishing a scoping relationship.  
 1880 Note that the SensoredElement adaptation adapts the CIM\_ManagedSystemElement  
 1881 class. That way any profile adapting the CIM\_ManagedSystemElement class (or a

1882 subclass thereof) as its central class adaptation could define a scoping relationship to the  
 1883 Example Sensors profile.



1884

1885

**Figure 5 – Two variants of a component profile using another component profile**

1886 Note that the right variant shown in Figure 5 would require the central class profile advertisement  
 1887 methodology as defined in the Profile Registration profile (see [DSP1033](#)) to be implemented for the  
 1888 Example Fan profile because version 1.0 of the Profile Registration profile does not allow the scoping  
 1889 class profile advertisement methodology span two or more levels of profiles.

1890 **7.10 Definition of abstract and concrete profiles**

1891 **7.10.1 Abstract profile**

1892 An abstract profile is a special kind of profile specifying common elements and behavior as a base for  
 1893 derived profiles.

1894 An abstract profile is explicitly designated as abstract.

1895 An abstract profile shall not be implemented directly; instead, the definitions and requirements of an  
 1896 abstract profile are propagated into derived profiles (see 7.9.2) and apply for profile implementations  
 1897 implementing concrete derived profiles.

1898 An abstract profile may define class adaptations of concrete classes and/or abstract classes.

1899 An abstract profile may define concrete class adaptations and/or abstract class adaptations.

1900 An abstract profile may be a derived profile, and may be further derived.

1901 Abstract profiles serve two purposes:

- 1902       • Provide a base for derived profiles
- 1903       • Provide a point of reference for referencing profiles

1904 For example, an abstract profile could be defined for the management domain of basic computer system  
 1905 management, and derived profiles could tailor that to various types of computer systems such as desktop  
 1906 computer systems or virtual computer systems.

1907 Profiles may define a profile usage relationship to abstract profiles. For example, a profile addressing the  
 1908 management domain of virtual computer system could define a profile usage of an abstract profile  
 1909 addressing the management domain of allocating resources to consumers.

1910 **7.10.2 Concrete profile**

1911 A concrete profile is any profile that is not an abstract profile. Only concrete profiles may be directly  
 1912 implemented. A concrete profile may be a derived profile, and a derived profile may be based on both  
 1913 concrete profiles and/or abstract profiles.

1914 Specific requirements for the definition of adaptations of abstract classes apply; see 7.13.5.

1915 Furthermore, 7.14 defines requirements for concrete profiles related to profile registration.

1916 **7.11 Definition of the management domain**

1917 A profile should define the set of managed object types from the management domain addressed by the  
 1918 profile. These definitions should define the functionality of respective managed objects to the extent  
 1919 exposed by the model defined by the profile such that an implementer who implements the profile for a  
 1920 particular type of managed environment is enabled to realize the profile defined mappings (see 6.6.1).

1921 In some cases it may be sufficient to refer to respective definitions in the schema definition of adapted  
 1922 classes. However, generally profiles adapt generic classes to model a more specific managed object type  
 1923 than that described in the schema definition of each adapted class.

1924 For example, in Table 1 a simple definition of a management domain by a profile defining a management  
 1925 interface for the management of files and file systems is shown.

1926 **Table 1 – Example management domain definition**

| <b>X-6</b> | <b>Description</b>   |
|------------|--|
|            | This profile addresses the management domain of file management. The major object types are files, directories, and file systems.  |
|            | A <i>file system</i> is a set of files that is collectively stored. A file system and its files are accessible by clients. Each file system contains one root directory.   |
|            | A <i>file</i> is a block of arbitrary information that is stored in a file system. Each file shall have an identifier that uniquely identifies the file in the scope of a file system. Files may be referenced by one or more directories; each such file reference defines a file name that shall be unique within the referencing directory. |
|            | A <i>directory</i> is a special kind of file that contains a list of references to files; each list entry references one file. A directory shall assign a name to each referenced file that is unique in scope of the directory.   |

1927 In this example the management domain definition shown in Table 1 would enable a profile  
 1928 implementation of the file management profile for the FAT file system to establish a mapping between  
 1929 object types defined by the file management profile and respective elements defined by the specification  
 1930 of the FAT file system.

## 1931 7.12 Definition of registry references

1932 Profiles may reference message registries and metric registries.

1933 Message registries are registries that conform to [DSP0228](#) and contain message definitions.

1934 Metric registries are registries that conform to [DSP8020](#) and contain metric definitions.

1935 A registry reference is a named profile element (see 7.2.2) that references a registry by stating the type of  
1936 the referenced registry and by identifying the minimally required version of the referenced registry. A  
1937 subject profile defining registry references should provide a description that details the use of each  
1938 referenced registry within the subject profile.

1939 A registry reference shall be assigned a name as defined in 7.2.2.

1940 NOTE The use of a local name for registry references provides for the possibility of overrides if subsequent  
1941 versions of a profile need to refer to a different registry that compatibly supersedes the originally  
1942 referenced registry; see 7.9.2.8. Furthermore, the local name is used to identify the registry when  
1943 referencing elements defined within the registry.

1944 The type of the referenced registry shall be either message registry or metric registry.

1945 The identification of the minimally required version of the referenced registry shall be stated with all of the  
1946 following:

- 1947 • the unique identifier of the registry as assigned by the owning organization. For registries  
1948 conforming to [DSP0228](#) or [DSP8020](#), this is the value of the ID attribute; the fully qualified  
1949 XPATH location of the ID attribute in both types of registry is  
1950 /REGISTRY/REGISTRY\_DECLARATION/IDENTIFICATION/@ID.
- 1951 • the major version identifier, the minor version identifier, and optionally the update identifier of  
1952 the registry. The update identifier should only be used in cases where dependencies on the  
1953 update version exist that are not already addressed by the minor version. Regardless of  
1954 whether an update identifier is stated, the latest published update version with the stated major  
1955 and minor version identifier is referenced; in other words, while an update identifier identifies the  
1956 minimally required update version, it shall be interpreted as referring to the latest update version  
1957 published after the minimally required update version. For further details, see [DSP4014](#).
- 1958 • the organization that owns the registry

1959 Profiles may refer to messages defined in message registries, as part of their other definitions.

1960 As part of their other definitions, profiles may refer to metric definitions defined in metric registries.

## 1961 7.13 Definition of class adaptations

### 1962 7.13.1 General

1963 A class adaptation is a named profile element; the rules defined in 7.2.2 apply. Class adaptations may be  
1964 referred to simply as *adaptations*.

1965 An adaptation defines the use of a class defined in a schema for a particular purpose.

1966 In addition to *adapting* a schema defined class, an adaptation may further be *based on* one or more other  
1967 adaptations. The subject profile may establish further constraints for an adaptation beyond those  
1968 established by the schema definition of the adapted class, or by referenced adaptations.

---

**1969 DEPRECATED**

1970 Profiles that were created in conformance with version 1.0 of this guide did not define adaptations, but so  
 1971 called "*profile classes*" (sometimes also called "profiled class", "supported class" or just "class"). The  
 1972 concept of "profile classes" obliterated the distinction between the schema definition of a class, and the  
 1973 profile defined use of the class. The semantics of "profile classes" can viewed as a subset of the  
 1974 semantics of adaptations; for example, "profile classes" lack the ability to be based on each other. A  
 1975 "profile class" used the name of the adapted schema class; that name could be suffixed with an optional  
 1976 modifier in order to resolve name clashes.

1977 Minor revisions of profiles specified in compliance with version 1.0 of this guide may continue using the  
 1978 following naming convention for adaptations (stated in ABNF):

1979 `ProfileClassName = SchemaClassName [ "(" Modifier ")" ]`

1980 `SchemaClassName` is the name of the class defined in the schema. `Modifier` is a short descriptor that  
 1981 describes the use of the adapted class in the context of the profile. The modifier should be composed of  
 1982 less than 30 characters.

1983 Examples:

1984 `CIM_ComputerSystem`

1985 `CIM_ComputerSystem (Switch)`

1986 `CIM_StoragePool (Primordial pool)`

1987 This naming convention shall only be applied for existing definitions of "profile classes" in minor revisions  
 1988 of existing profiles. Newly introduced adaptations in minor revisions shall not apply this naming  
 1989 convention.

---

**1990 DEPRECATED**

---

**1991 7.13.2 Requirements for definitions of all kinds of adaptations**

1992 This subclause defines requirements for definitions of all kinds of adaptations: Adaptations of ordinary  
 1993 classes, adaptations of association classes, and adaptations of indication classes.

**1994 7.13.2.1 Adapted class and base adaptations**

1995 An adaptation adapts a class defined in a schema for a particular purpose; this class is called the adapted  
 1996 class.

1997 In addition, an adaptation may be based on zero or more other adaptations; these adaptations are called  
 1998 base adaptations.

1999 For a particular adaptation, the following rules apply:

- 2000 • **Rule I:** One adapted class.

2001 An adaptation shall identify exactly one class defined in a schema as the adapted class.

- 2002 • **Rule II:** Zero or more base adaptations.

2003 An adaptation may reference one or more adaptations defined in the same or in referenced  
 2004 profiles as base adaptations.

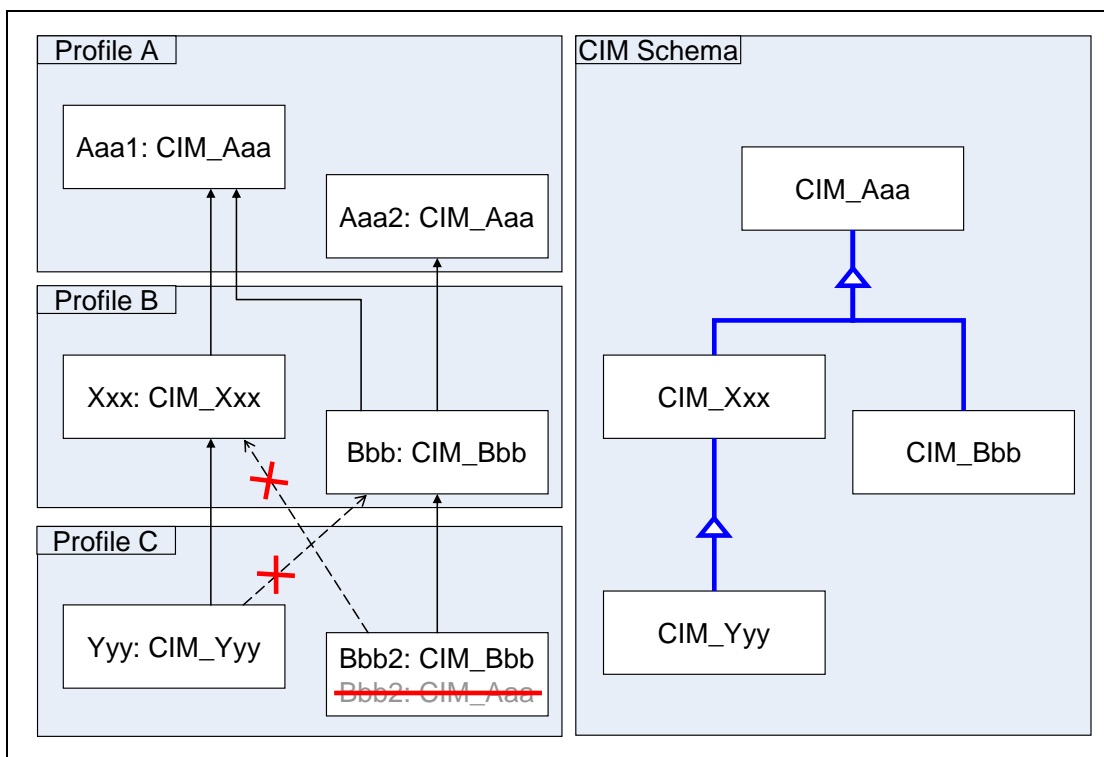
- 2005 • **Rule III:** Compatibility of the adapted class with that of base adaptations.

2006 If a class adaptation A adapts a class C and is based on one or more other adaptations A<sub>1</sub>  
 2007 adapting C<sub>1</sub>, A<sub>2</sub> adapting C<sub>2</sub>, ..., A<sub>n</sub> adapting C<sub>n</sub>, then C shall be the same or a subclass of any  
 2008 C<sub>i</sub>, i=1...n.

2009 NOTE The last requirement ensures that a profile implementation of the subject profile can implement class C  
 2010 without verifying whether a base adaptation requires the implementation of a subclass of C. This enables  
 2011 the supplementary addition of the profile implementation of a new component profile to a previously  
 2012 existing implementation of a set of profiles, where the new component profile is not referenced.

2013 A class adaptation, its adapted class, its set of base adaptations, and their adapted classes form a  
 2014 directed acyclic graph (DAG). This graph is called the span of the class adaptation.

2015 Figure 6 shows an example that illustrates how the rules defined in this subclause establish limitations for  
 2016 the selection of base adaptations or of adaptable classes, after an initial choice is made.



2017  
 2018 **Figure 6 – Class adaptation reference example**

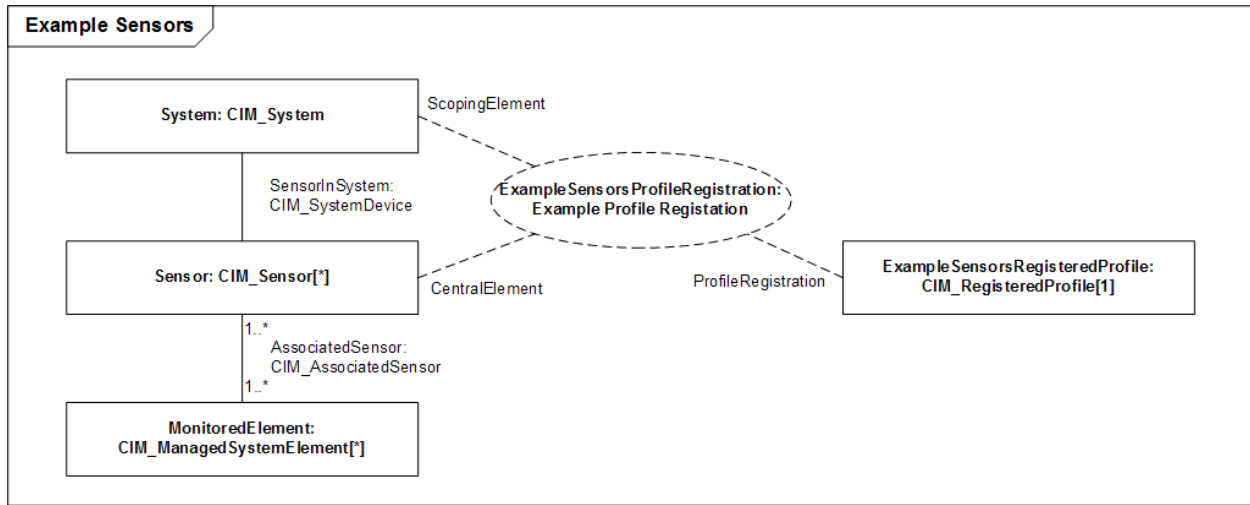
2019 In the example shown in Figure 6, the crossed relationships would violate Rule II, as follows:

- 2020 • Adaptation Yyy must not be based on adaptation Bbb because Yyy adapts CIM\_Yyy, but Bbb  
 2021 adapts CIM\_Bbb that is not CIM\_Yyy or a superclass of CIM\_Yyy; likewise, adaptation Bbb2  
 2022 must not be based on adaptation Xxx.
- 2023 • Adaptation Bbb2 must not adapt CIM\_Aaa, because Bbb2 is based on Bbb, and Bbb adapts  
 2024 CIM\_Bbb that is a subclass of CIM\_Aaa.

2025 Profiles shall not adapt classes that are marked as deprecated in their schema definition, except in the  
 2026 case where a revision of an existing profile retains an adaptation of a class that was marked as  
 2027 deprecated in a later version of the schema.

2028 If an adaptation is based on one or more base adaptations, all of the following rules apply for that  
 2029 adaptation:

- 2030 • All definitions and requirements defined by base adaptations are propagated into the  
2031 adaptation.
  - 2032 • The potential set of instances of an adaptation shall be a subset of the potential set of instances  
2033 of each of its base adaptations. For example, if the VirtualSystem adaptation defined by an  
2034 Example Virtual System profile is based on the ComputerSystem adaptation of an Example  
2035 Computer System profile, then the potential set of instances of the VirtualSystem adaptation is  
2036 required to be a subset of the potential set of instances of the ComputerSystem adaptation.
- 2037 DMTF collaboration structure diagrams (see 8.3.4) are specifically tailored to graphically depict the  
2038 dependencies introduced by basing adaptations on other adaptations.



2039  
2040 **Figure 7 – DMTF collaboration structure diagram of an Example Sensors profile**

2041 Figure 7 shows the DMTF collaboration structure diagram of an Example Sensors profile; for details about  
2042 DMTF collaboration structure diagrams, see 8.3.4.

2043 In Figure 7, the dashed oval labeled "ExampleSensorsProfileRegistration: Example Profile Registration"  
2044 represents the Example Sensors profile's reference to the Example Profile Registration profile. The solid  
2045 rectangle labeled "Sensor: CIM\_Sensor" represents the Example Sensors profile's Sensor adaptation of  
2046 the CIM\_Sensor class. The dashed line labeled "CentralElement" indicates that the Sensor adaptation of  
2047 the Example Sensors profile is based on the CentralElement adaptation of the Example Profile  
2048 Registration profile. Likewise, the System adaptation of the Example Sensors profile is based on the  
2049 ScopingElement adaptation of the Example Profile Registration profile, and the  
2050 ExampleSensorsRegisteredProfile adaptation of the Example Sensors profile is based on the  
2051 RegisteredProfile adaptation of the Example Profile Registration profile.

2052 The capability of basing adaptations on other adaptations enables encapsulation, resulting in simplified  
2053 modeling approaches. For example, in Figure 7 an adaptation of the CIM\_ElementConformsToProfile  
2054 association is not shown. Instead, it is assumed that a respective association adaptation is defined by the  
2055 Example Profile Registration profile. That way, the different approaches to modeling the functionality  
2056 related to profile registration is exclusively defined in the Example Profile Registration profile, and there is  
2057 no need to refine that adaptation in the Example Sensors profile.

2058 Furthermore, the capability of basing adaptations defined in one profile on adaptations defined in  
2059 referenced profiles provides for a much finer granularity of profile dependencies: With this approach  
2060 requirements are introduced at the level of adaptations rather than at the level of profiles. For example,  
2061 the approach of basing the central and scoping adaptations on respective adaptations of the Example  
2062 Profile Registration Profile as shown in Figure 7 is much stricter than that of only referencing the Example  
2063 Profile Registration Profile as a mandatory profile.



### 2064 7.13.2.2 Management domain context of class adaptations

2065 For each adaptation it defines, the subject profile shall state the managed object type from the  
2066 management domain (or the aspect of a managed object type) that is modeled by the adaptation. See  
2067 7.11 for requirements on defining the management domain and its managed object types.

2068 NOTE Elements from the CIM infrastructure can also be described by managed object types, such as, for  
2069 example, registered profiles or indication filters. While without CIM these elements would not exist as  
2070 managed objects in a managed environment (unlike, for example, computer systems or file systems), they  
2071 are part of the managed environment if CIM is applied for defining and realizing the management  
2072 infrastructure, and are modeled by adaptations of CIM classes. For example, an Example Profile  
2073 Registration profile might model a RegisteredProfile adaptation of the CIM\_RegisteredProfile class  
2074 modeling the managed object type "registered profile", or an Example Indications profile might model an  
2075 IndicationFilter adaptation of the CIM\_IndicationFilter class modeling the managed object type "indication  
2076 filter".

2077 For adaptations of association classes, the management domain context may be specified in the form of  
2078 a relationship, such as, for example, a containment.

2079 For adaptations of indication classes, the management domain context may be specified by stating the  
2080 event that is reported by instances of the adapted indication class.

### 2081 7.13.2.3 Requirement level

2082 For each adaptation it defines, the subject profile shall designate a requirement level that determines the  
2083 requirement for implementing the adaptation as part of the profile implementation of the subject profile.

### 2084 7.13.2.4 Individual requirement levels of base adaptations

2085 If an adaptation is based on other adaptations (see 7.13.2.1), then each such relationship shall be  
2086 designated with a separate requirement level that determines the requirement for implementing the base  
2087 adaptation as part of implementing the subject adaptation.

2088 NOTE The typical requirement level for a base adaptation is mandatory. In some cases a requirement level of  
2089 conditional/conditional exclusive for a feature is a favorable alternative. As an example, consider the case  
2090 in which the subject profile defines an optional Metrics feature. In this case, some adaptations of the  
2091 subject profile would typically be based on adaptations defined in the Base Metrics profile, but only if the  
2092 optional Metrics feature of the subject profile is implemented.

### 2093 7.13.2.5 Implementation type

2094 Each adaptation shall be designated with an implementation type that details how the adaptation is to be  
2095 implemented.

2096 The following implementation types are possible:

2097 **instantiated**: indicates that the adaptation is to be implemented such that instances of the  
2098 adaptation are instantiated on their own, i.e. they can be referenced with an instance path by a client.

2099 **embedded**: indicates that the adaptation is to be implemented such that instances of the adaptation  
2100 are embedded into an embedding element; they cannot directly be referenced with an instance path  
2101 by a client.

2102 **abstract**: indicates that the implementation type of the adaptation is defined by its derived  
2103 adaptations. Profiles shall assign the abstract implementation type if the functionality defined by the  
2104 adaptation is not independently required for a functioning profile implementation, but instead is  
2105 designed to be refined by other adaptations (defined in the same, or in other profiles) that define the  
2106 abstract class adaptation as a base adaptation (for details, see 7.13.2.1). Insofar, the use of the  
2107 abstract implementation type delegates the selection of an implementation type to adaptations based  
2108 on the abstract class adaptation.

2109 **indication:** indicates that the adaptation is to be implemented such that instances of the adaptation  
 2110 are embedded as elements in indication delivery operations. The "indication" implementation type is  
 2111 only applicable for adaptations of classes that have effective qualifier values of Indication=True and  
 2112 Exception=False.

2113 **exception:** indicates that the adaptation is to be implemented such that instances of the adaptation  
 2114 are embedded into operation exceptions (typically delivered as fault responses of operations). The  
 2115 "exception" implementation type is only applicable for adaptations of classes that have effective  
 2116 qualifier values of Indication=True and Exception=True.

## 2117 DEPRECATED

2118 Profiles that were created in conformance with version 1.0 of this guide did not designate adaptations with  
 2119 an implementation type. Minor revisions of profiles specified in compliance with version 1.0 of this guide  
 2120 may continue not designating an implementation type to the adaptations they define. In this case, a  
 2121 default implementation type shall be assumed, as follows:

- 2122 • For adaptations of classes that have effective qualifier values of Indication=True and  
 2123 Exception=False, the default implementation type is "indication".
- 2124 • For adaptations of classes that have effective qualifier values of Indication=True and  
 2125 Exception=True, the default implementation type is "exception".
- 2126 • For all other adaptations, the default implementation type is "instantiated".

## 2127 DEPRECATED

### 2128 7.13.2.6 Designation of base adaptation candidates

2129 A profile may designate individual adaptations as base adaptation candidates. The purpose of this  
 2130 designation is conveying to authors of referencing profiles that — from the perspective of the defining  
 2131 profile — the designated adaptation models a functional element with the intention to be refined by means  
 2132 of defining derived adaptations in referencing profiles.

2133 NOTE Formally, any adaptation defined in a profile can be used as a base adaptation; however, the specific  
 2134 designation of an adaptation as a base adaptation candidate is intended to serve as a hint to authors of  
 2135 referencing profiles for considering the definition of a derived adaptation.

### 2136 7.13.2.7 Use of the value Null as property or parameter value

2137 [DSP0223](#) requires that on method invocation values are provided for all input parameters, and on method  
 2138 return values are returned for all output parameters and for the method return value. However, unless  
 2139 otherwise required by profiles and/or the schema, Null is a legal value. [DSP0004](#) states that the special  
 2140 value Null indicates the absence of a value. Profiles should avoid assigning the value Null a semantic  
 2141 other than that defined in [DSP0004](#). Profiles should specify the implementation behavior in the case of  
 2142 the absence of an input parameter value (that is, an input value Null). Profiles should specify how the  
 2143 absence of an output parameter value or of a method return value (that is, an output value Null) is to be  
 2144 interpreted. This applies likewise to property values in adaptation instances that are used as input or  
 2145 output value for parameters of methods or operations, or as method return values.

### 2146 7.13.2.8 Definition of property requirements

#### 2147 7.13.2.8.1 General

2148 For each adaptation it defines, the subject profile may define property requirements for properties that are  
 2149 exposed by the adapted class.

**2150 7.13.2.8.2 Requirement level**

2151 Each property requirement shall be designated with a "presentation" requirement level that determines  
2152 the requirement for implementing the property as part implementing the adaptation for the purpose of  
2153 presenting information.

2154 In addition, for adaptations with the "instantiated" implementation type (see 7.13.2.5) that a profile defines  
2155 as creatable and/or modifiable by clients, separate requirement levels for specific property values may be  
2156 specified:

- 2157 • An "initialization" requirement level that determines if the specific value shall be implemented as  
2158 a property initialization value; for details, see 7.13.2.11.2.
- 2159 • A "modification" requirement level that determines if the specific value shall be implemented as  
2160 a property modification value; for details, see 7.13.2.11.3.

**2161 7.13.2.8.3 Rules for the repetition of schema requirements**

2162 In adaptations mandatory property requirements shall be defined for all key properties and for all  
2163 properties for which the Required qualifier has an effective value of True, unless respective property  
2164 requirements are already stated by a base adaptation.

2165 NOTE This requirement aims at relieving profile consumers from analyzing the schema for respective  
2166 requirements.

2167 Otherwise, a subject profile should not replicate requirements from the schema or from base profiles  
2168 unless needed for establishing additional requirements of the subject profile.

**2169 7.13.2.8.4 Requirements for the specification of property constraints**

2170 The base set of permissible property values is defined by schema definition of the adapted class and/or  
2171 its superclasses; as a matter of principle, schema definitions cannot be extended by profiles.

2172 A profile may specify constraints and requirements as part of property requirements. Any such constraints  
2173 and requirements apply in addition to, and shall not contradict, any constraints and requirements defined  
2174 in the adapted class, its superclasses and any base adaptation.

2175 In other words, profiles shall not specify property requirements that extend the set of permissible property  
2176 values as constrained in base adaptations, but may specify property requirements that further constrain  
2177 the set of permissible property values.

2178 In addition, for adaptations with the "instantiated" implementation type (see 7.13.2.5), separate value  
2179 constraints may be specified for the presentation, the initialization and the modification of the property  
2180 value; however, the value constraints for the initialization and modification shall be within those defined  
2181 for the presentation.

2182 The schema definition of the adapted class, its superclasses, or any base adaptation may specify rules  
2183 that prohibit or establish limitations for the definition of such constraints in general, or under certain  
2184 conditions.

2185 Profiles shall not define property requirements for properties that are marked as deprecated in the  
2186 schema definition of the adapted class, except within revisions of existing profiles that retain a property  
2187 requirement for a property that was marked as deprecated in a subsequent version of the schema after  
2188 the original version of the profile was released.

**2189 7.13.2.8.5 Management domain context of properties**

2190 As part of every property requirement, the profile shall specify the aspect of managed objects that  
2191 represented by adaptation instances and is reflected by the property, unless that aspect is already  
2192 precisely established by a base adaptation or an adapted class. For example, an Example Fan profile

2193 referencing the EnabledState property of the CIM\_Fan class in its Fan adaptation would state that the  
 2194 value of the EnabledState property represents the state of the represented fan and relate values of the  
 2195 value set of the EnabledState property to possible fan states.

### 2196 **7.13.2.9 Default values for properties, parameters and method return values**

2197 A profile may specify a default value for a property, parameter or method return value. Profile specified  
 2198 default output values apply in the case where a more specific value is indiscernible by the profile  
 2199 implementation. For example, a profile could define the empty string "" as a default value for the  
 2200 ElementName property that is required by the schema to have a non-Null value. In this case that value  
 2201 would have to be returned in the case where a profile implementation is unable to produce a more  
 2202 specific value.

2203 NOTE The semantics of profile defined default values differ from schema defined default values as defined in  
 2204 [DSP0004](#). In the schema default values can only be defined for properties and are considered initialization  
 2205 constraints; initialization constraints determine the initial value of the property in new instances; see also  
 2206 7.13.3.3.3.

### 2207 **7.13.2.10 Value constraints for properties, parameters and method return values**

#### 2208 **7.13.2.10.1 General**

2209 Profiles may define value constraints for properties, parameters and method return values using various  
 2210 mechanisms such as restricting a set of distinct values of numeric or string type in a value map, restricting  
 2211 a numeric value range, restricting bits in a bit map or constraints based on logical expressions of other  
 2212 constraints.

2213 If a profile defines value constraints, these should be defined allowing for adequate margin with respect to  
 2214 the implementations ability to represent (aspects of) managed objects by adaptation instances (see  
 2215 7.13.2.8.5), and with respect to represent the outcome of a method execution in the method result (see  
 2216 7.13.3.2.2 and 7.13.3.2.3).

2217 Value constraint do not imply value requirements; in other words, it is not required that all the values from  
 2218 the value set determined by the conjunction of the all value constraints are implemented. However, for  
 2219 input values, specific input value requirements may be specified (see 7.13.2.11).

2220 NOTE This guide also establishes specific conventions for the specification of value constraints in profile  
 2221 specifications; for details, see 10.2.4.

#### 2222 **7.13.2.10.2 Value constraints for reference values**

2223 Profiles may define constraints as part of property requirements for reference properties in association  
 2224 adaptations, and as part of method requirement for reference parameters and reference method return  
 2225 values, as follows:

- 2226 • The constraint shall state the adaptation that the reference property refers to. It is required that  
 2227 the referenced adaptation is defined in the subject profile.
- 2228 • The referenced adaptation shall be compatible with the class that is referenced by the reference  
 2229 property, parameter or return value in the adapted class; for details, see 7.13.2.1.
- 2230 • Profiles may constrain the multiplicities of references in association adaptations. These  
 2231 multiplicities shall be the same as or narrower than the most narrow multiplicity defined in the  
 2232 adapted class and in any base adaptation and its adapted class.

2233 As a consequence of the first rule, it is not possible that a subject profile can define an association  
 2234 adaptation that references an adaptation defined in a referencing profile because the referencing profile  
 2235 and its adaptation are not known in the subject profile. This situation can be solved by defining the  
 2236 associated adaptation directly in the subject profile, and base the adaptation in the referencing profile on  
 2237 the new adaptation in the referenced profile. In most cases the adaptation in the subject profile can be

2238 stated as a trivial class adaptation (see 7.13.6) which causes only minimal modeling effort. The  
 2239 advantage of this approach is that the adaptation dependencies are explicitly defined and it is not left to  
 2240 the implementer to figure out which adaptation in a referenced profile actually referenced.

2241 For example, consider an Example Fan profile modeling a relationship between a fan and the system that  
 2242 contains the fan by means of the CIM\_SystemDevice association. That profile would model a Fan  
 2243 adaptation of the CIM\_Fan class, a (trivial) FanSystem adaptation of the CIM\_System class, and a  
 2244 FanInSystem adaptation of the CIM\_SystemDevice association that references the Fan and the  
 2245 FanSystem adaptations.

2246 **NOTE** Version 1.0 of this guide does not clearly separate adaptations (which were called "profile classes" – see  
 2247 7.13.1) and CIM classes. DMTF profile class diagrams in component profiles conforming to version 1.0 of  
 2248 this guide frequently depict "profile classes" from a referencing profile and annotate it with the phrase "See  
 2249 referencing profile". Implementers of such profiles in context of a particular referencing profile now need to  
 2250 determine which "profile class" in the referencing profile is actually referenced. This is a trivial task if only  
 2251 one "profile class" for the respective CIM class is defined in the referencing profile, but causes ambiguities  
 2252 if more than one "profile class" of that CIM class is defined, and the association reference is not further  
 2253 constrained to reference a particular "profile class".

### 2254 7.13.2.10.3 Value constrains through format specifications

2255 Profiles may specify a mechanism that conveys the format for the values of string-typed properties,  
 2256 method parameters and method return values.

2257 For some of the format specification mechanisms that a profile may apply, this guide defines rules that  
 2258 govern the application of these mechanisms, as follows:

- 2259 • If a profile uses regular expressions to define the format, the regular expressions shall conform  
 2260 to the syntax defined in Annex B.
- 2261 • If a profile uses a grammar to define the format, the grammar shall be stated in ABNF (see  
 2262 [RFC5234](#)). A profile may define extensions and modifications to ABNF; if so, these shall be  
 2263 documented in the profile.

2264 **NOTE** The specification of units is established in schema definitions through the use of the PUNIT or the  
 2265 ISPUNIT qualifiers.

### 2266 7.13.2.10.4 Property non-Null value constraint implied by the requirement level

2267 If a property is required by a subject profile with either the mandatory requirement level, or with the  
 2268 conditional or conditional exclusive requirement level and the condition being True, the value Null is not  
 2269 admissible for the property (see 9.3.2).

2270 Profiles may exempt this rule and allow Null as an admissible value; however, such exemptions should be  
 2271 specified separately for each property where the value Null is admissible.

2272 A respective value constraint is not implied for the use of Null as an input value; however, specific input  
 2273 value requirements may be defined (see 7.13.2.11).

## 2274 7.13.2.11 Input value requirements

### 2275 7.13.2.11.1 General

2276 Input value requirements are requirements for the implementation of particular input values.

2277 An input value requirement requires that the input value must be implemented, that is, be accepted when  
 2278 provided as input, and not be rejected for the reason of not being implemented; however, a rejection for  
 2279 other reasons is not prohibited. Input value requirements may be specified for specific values of method  
 2280 input parameters, and — with respect to the initialization or modification of property values — for specific  
 2281 property values as part of property requirements in adaptations.

2282 NOTE Value requirements for output values can only be specified by means of value constraints (see 7.13.2.10).  
2283 Recall that property values are required to represent the state of the managed environment represented by  
2284 the adaptation instance (see 7.13.2.8.5), and that method return values and method output parameter  
2285 values are required to represent the outcome of the method execution (see 7.13.3.2.2 and 7.13.3.2.3).

### 2286 7.13.2.11.2 Property initialization value requirement

2287 Property initialization value requirements are input value requirements that may be specified with property  
2288 requirements in the definition of adaptations with an implementation type (see 7.13.2.5) of "instantiated".  
2289 Property initialization input value requirements shall not be specified in the definition of adaptations with  
2290 other implementation types.

2291 Each property initialization value requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that  
2292 determines the requirement for implementing the value as property initialization value.

2293 A property initialization value requirement states that a specific input value for a property shall be  
2294 implemented, that is, be accepted when provided through any operation or method that creates instances  
2295 of the adaptation (such as the CreateInstance( ) operation defined in [DSP0223](#), or as methods that take  
2296 an embedded adaptation instance as input). A property initialization value requirement is only applicable if  
2297 such operations or methods are implemented.

2298 Implementing a property initialization value does not preclude its rejection for reasons other than not  
2299 being implemented, such as that the state of the managed environment does not currently allow the  
2300 instance creation request to be executed with the given input instance.

2301 Property initialization value requirements shall only be specified for values that are within the value  
2302 constraints established for the property (see 7.13.2.10). In addition, creation methods or operations may  
2303 define separate constraints that limit their specific sets of acceptable values beyond those defined by  
2304 property constraints.

2305 If for a possible value no property initialization value requirement is specified, the implementation may  
2306 either accept or reject that value when provided as initialization value.

2307 The semantics of the creation operation or method may define how initialization values are processed.  
2308 Defining semantics includes the possibility that an initialization value is only considered a hint, such that  
2309 the value resulting from the instance creation differs from the provided initialization value. If no specific  
2310 semantics are defined, the default shall be that the initialization value is carried over unmodified into the  
2311 new instance.

### 2312 7.13.2.11.3 Property modification value requirement

2313 Property modification value requirements are input value requirements that may be specified with  
2314 property requirements in the definition of adaptations with an implementation type (see 7.13.2.5) of  
2315 "instantiated". Property modification value requirements shall not be specified in the definition of  
2316 adaptations with other implementation types.

2317 Each property modification value requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that  
2318 determines the requirement for implementing the value as property modification value.

2319 A property modification value requirement states that a specific value for a property must be  
2320 implemented, that is, be accepted when provided through any operation or method that modifies  
2321 instances of the adaptation (such as the ModifyInstance( ) operation defined in [DSP0223](#), or as methods  
2322 that take an embedded adaptation instance as input). A property modification value requirement is only  
2323 applicable if such operations or methods are implemented.

2324 Implementing a property modification value does not preclude its rejection for reasons other than not  
2325 being implemented, such as that the state of the managed environment does not currently allow the  
2326 instance modification request to be executed with the given input instance.

2327 Property modification value requirements shall only be specified for values that are within the value  
2328 constraints established for the property (see 7.13.2.10). In addition, modification methods or operations  
2329 may define separate constraints that limit their specific sets of acceptable values beyond those defined by  
2330 property constraints.

2331 If for a possible value no property modification value requirement is specified, the implementation may  
2332 either accept or reject that value when provided as modification value.

2333 The semantics of the modification operation or method may define how modification values are  
2334 processed. Defining semantics includes the possibility that a modification value is only considered a hint,  
2335 such that the value resulting from the instance modification differs from the provided modification value. If  
2336 no specific semantics is defined, the default shall be that the modification value is carried over unmodified  
2337 into the target instance.

#### 2338 **7.13.2.11.4 Input parameter value requirement**

2339 Input parameter value requirements are input value requirements that may be specified for input  
2340 parameters as part of method requirements in adaptation definitions. Value requirements shall not be  
2341 specified for output parameters (for reasons detailed in 7.13.2.11.1).

2342 Each input parameter value requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that determines the  
2343 requirement for implementing the value as input parameter value.

2344 An input parameter value requirement states that a specific value for an input parameter shall be  
2345 implemented, that is, be accepted when provided as actual value in a method invocation.

2346 Implementing an input parameter value does not preclude its rejection for reasons other than not being  
2347 implemented, such as that the state of the managed environment does not currently allow the method  
2348 execution request to be executed with the given set of input parameter values.

2349 Input parameter value requirements shall only be specified for values that are within the value constraints  
2350 established for the input parameter (see 7.13.2.10).

2351 If for a particular parameter no parameter input value requirement is specified, the implementation  
2352 behavior with respect to accepting input values for that parameter is undefined.

2353 If for a possible value no input parameter value requirement is specified, the implementation behavior  
2354 with respect to accepting that value as input is undefined.

### 2355 **7.13.3 Requirements for definitions of adaptations of ordinary classes and associations**

#### 2356 **7.13.3.1 General**

2357 Subclause 7.13.3 defines requirements for the definition of adaptations of ordinary classes and for the  
2358 definition of adaptations of associations. These requirements apply in addition to the requirements  
2359 defined in 7.13.2 for the definition of adaptations of all kinds of classes.

#### 2360 **7.13.3.2 Definition of method requirements**

##### 2361 **7.13.3.2.1 General**

2362 For each class adaptation of ordinary classes or associations it defines, a profile may define method  
2363 requirements for methods that are exposed by the adapted class.

2364 Each method requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that determines the requirement  
2365 for implementing the method.

2366 For the definition of requirements for parameters and method return values the requirements of 7.13.2.10  
2367 apply.

2368 Profiles shall not define method requirements for methods that are marked as deprecated in the schema  
 2369 definition of the adapted class, except within revisions of existing profiles that retain a method  
 2370 requirement for a method that was marked as deprecated in a subsequent version of the schema after  
 2371 the original version of the profile was released.

2372 Note that the Required qualifier for methods means that the method return values must not be Null; this  
 2373 does not imply a requirement to implement the method.

2374 As part of a method requirement, a profile shall state requirements for all method parameters, each time  
 2375 repeating (from the schema definition of the adapted class) the effective values of the In and Out  
 2376 qualifiers and — if present — that of the Required qualifier.

2377 NOTE This requirement aims at relieving profile consumers from analyzing the schema for respective  
 2378 requirements.

2379 In addition, for each input parameter, input value requirements may be specified; for details, see  
 2380 7.13.2.11.4.

2381 Profiles should not replicate requirements from the schema or from base profiles unless needed for  
 2382 establishing additional requirements of the subject profile.

### 2383 7.13.3.2.2 Requirements for the specification of constraints on methods and their parameters

2384 The base set of permissible parameter and method return values is defined in the schema definition of  
 2385 the adapted class and/or its superclasses; as a matter of principle, schema definitions cannot be  
 2386 extended by profiles.

2387 A profile may specify constraints and requirements for methods and their parameters (including method  
 2388 return values) as part of the method requirements.

2389 Any such constraints and requirements shall apply in addition to, but shall not contradict, any constraints  
 2390 and requirements defined in the adapted class, its superclasses, and in base adaptations.

2391 Different rules are established for the definition of such constraints for output parameters and method  
 2392 return values, as opposed to those for input parameters:

- 2393 • For output parameters and method return values, profiles shall not specify method requirements  
 2394 that extend the set of permissible values as constrained in base adaptations, but may specify  
 2395 method requirements that further constrain that set. This rule ensures that the value set cannot  
 2396 be extended, and a client of a base adaptation never receives output values outside of the  
 2397 constraints established by base adaptations, even if an adaptation based on the base  
 2398 adaptation is actually implemented.

- 2399 • For input parameters, profiles shall not specify method requirements that further constrain the  
 2400 set of permissible input values as constrained in base adaptations, but may specify method  
 2401 requirements that extend that set. This rule ensures that the permissible input value set cannot  
 2402 be reduced, and conforming input values supplied by a client of a base adaptation are always to  
 2403 be accepted by the profile implementation, even if actually a derived adaptation is implemented.

2404 However, note that this rule does not prohibit constraining the base set of permissible input  
 2405 values defined by the *schema definition* of the adapted class and/or its superclasses. In other  
 2406 words, a profile may specify method requirements constraining the base set of permissible input  
 2407 values for a property as established by the schema definition of the adapted class and/or its  
 2408 superclasses, such that only a smaller set of values is required to be accepted by a profile  
 2409 implementation. This applies likewise for property values of adaptation instances that are  
 2410 required as input value. Particularly, in adaptations modeling acceptable input parameter  
 2411 values, a profile may reduce the set of properties and their supported value ranges with respect  
 2412 to those defined by the adapted class and/or its superclasses, such that only the properties and  
 2413 value ranges established by the profile are required to be accepted by a profile implementation.



2414 Profiles may specify the semantics of specific values of method input parameters (including  
 2415 values of properties in input instances) within the constraints already defined by the schema  
 2416 definition and base profiles. For example, for a method defined for the purpose of modifying an  
 2417 adaptation instance with an instance input parameter (that may or may not be an embedded  
 2418 instance), a profile may define that the value Null for properties in the input instance means not  
 2419 to change the value in the target instance.

2420 NOTE This redefinition of the meaning of specific values is not generally possible for *instance*  
 2421 *modification operations* (see 7.13.3.3.4), because their semantics are established by the  
 2422 defining operations specification and usually require that all values from the input instance are  
 2423 to be carried over as given into the target instance. For that reason it might occasionally be  
 2424 advantageous to define methods with similar semantics as the creation and modification  
 2425 operations, but with more flexibility with respect to interpreting client provided input values,  
 2426 including the case to interpret values of certain input parameters as patterns or as suggestions,  
 2427 but not as strict value requirements.

2428 In any case the schema definition of the adapted class, its superclasses, or any base adaptation may  
 2429 specify rules that establish limitations for the definition of such constraints in general, or under certain  
 2430 conditions.

2431 NOTE These rules enforce polymorphic behavior of methods with respect to the method requirements defined in  
 2432 profiles. However, they do not enforce polymorphic behavior of methods with respect to the base set of  
 2433 permissible parameter value defined by the schema. This approach addresses the situation that schema  
 2434 definitions frequently define large value sets for input parameters with the intention that implementations  
 2435 constrain that value set to those values supportable by the implementation. Likewise, in the case where  
 2436 the input parameter is defined to be an (embedded) instance, that needs to be constrainable to instances  
 2437 of subclasses, to instances only containing values for a subset of the defined properties, and/or to  
 2438 instances where for specific properties the value set is constrained.

#### 2439 7.13.3.2.3 Management domain context of methods

2440 As part of every method requirement, a profile shall specify the method semantics with respect to the  
 2441 managed environment, unless these are already precisely defined by a base adaptation or by the schema  
 2442 definition of an adapted class. The description may adopt text from the schema description of the method,  
 2443 but the text shall be rephrased as standard English text.

2444 In the schema, method semantics are typically only described with respect to the CIM model. The  
 2445 semantics described in the profile shall not contradict those defined in the schema. In addition — because  
 2446 profiles need to describe the relationship between the CIM model and the managed environment  
 2447 represented by that CIM model — in profiles it is generally not sufficient to describe only the expected  
 2448 state of the CIM model after the method execution completes. Instead, profiles should detail the required  
 2449 changes on managed objects in the managed environment that cause corresponding changes in the CIM  
 2450 instances that represent the managed objects.

2451 For example, if an Example Fan profile requires that a fan is active as an effect of executing the  
 2452 RequestStateChange( ) method on the instance of the Fan adaptation representing the fan if the value of  
 2453 the RequestedState parameter is 2 (Enabled), that profile shall explicitly state as part of the required  
 2454 method semantics that the represented fan shall be activated, and not just that the value of the  
 2455 EnabledState property in the representing Fan instance shall be 2 (Enabled). The purpose of this  
 2456 requirement is to precisely instruct the implementer about the desired behavior in the managed  
 2457 environment, and not just about expected changes in the model representation of the managed  
 2458 environment. Of course, in addition the property requirements for the EnabledState property of the Fan  
 2459 adaptation need to separately state that the value shall be 2 (Enabled) if and only if the fan is active. For  
 2460 further rationale, see 6.6.3.

#### 2461 7.13.3.2.4 Specification of the reporting of method errors

2462 The rules for the specification of reporting of operation errors defined in 7.13.3.3.6 shall be applied.

### 2463 7.13.3.3 Definition of operation requirements

#### 2464 7.13.3.3.1 Operations specification

2465 Profiles shall select [DSP0223](#) as the operations specification, and define their operation requirements  
2466 with respect to operations defined in [DSP0223](#).

2467 NOTE This requirement was introduced in version 1.1 of this guide in order to foster more protocol independence  
2468 in profiles.

2469 NOTE In [DSP0223](#) V1.0.2, the generic operation names have been aligned with the operation names in  
2470 [DSP0200](#), for easier migration of management profiles.

#### 2471 7.13.3.3.2 General

2472 For each adaptation it defines, a profile shall define operation requirements. The operation requirements  
2473 shall be stated with respect to the operations defined in [DSP0223](#).

2474 Each operation requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that determines the requirement  
2475 for implementing the operation.

2476 Profiles shall not define operation requirements for the operation(s) defined by the operations  
2477 specification that request the execution of methods (such as the InvokeMethod( ) operation defined in  
2478 [DSP0223](#)); instead, such operations are implicitly required if the profile defines any method requirements  
2479 (see 7.13.3.2).

#### 2480 7.13.3.3.3 Specification of operation requirements for instance creation operations

2481 The operations specifications (see 7.13.3.3.1) allow the creation of CIM instances based on input CIM  
2482 instances provided by clients. In general, it is not required that values are provided in the input CIM  
2483 instance for all properties; however, profiles may specify requirements for implementing specific  
2484 initialization values (see 7.13.2.11.2).

2485 As part of operation requirements for instance creation operations, profiles may specify

- 2486 • preconditions that an input value is required to be provided in the input instance, or that an input  
2487 value is not permitted to be provided in the input instance; such preconditions may be tied to  
2488 other conditions specified by the profile.

2489 NOTE Operations specification define that provided values need to be reflected in the created  
2490 instance, and how values of properties for which the input instance does not exhibit a value are  
2491 to be determined for the created instance. For that reason the reinterpretation of specific values  
2492 of input properties that is possible for input parameters of methods (see 7.13.3.2.2) is not  
2493 admissible for operations.

- 2494 • property value initialization constraints unless such are established by the schema (for example,  
2495 by means such as the PropertyConstraint qualifier — see [DSP0004](#)).

- 2496 • the effects of the operation with respect to the managed object to be created in (or to be added  
2497 to) the managed environment.

2498 NOTE An operations specification can specify semantics for the instance creation operations with  
2499 respect to the resulting new instance.

- 2500 • error reporting requirements as detailed in 7.13.3.3.6.

2501 The specification of profile requirements for accepting input values for key properties in input instances  
2502 for instance creation operations is not recommended, except for reference properties. An implementation  
2503 is free to ignore any client provided value for a key property, except those for key reference properties.  
2504 Clients should abstain from providing values for key properties other than reference properties in input  
2505 instances for instance creation operations.

2506 NOTE The reason behind this requirement is that the implementation is responsible for ensuring the uniqueness  
 2507 of instances. If clients were allowed to dictate key property values, clashes of instance creation requests  
 2508 from independent clients would be predestined.

2509 For the creation of CIM instances it is of overriding importance that the lifecycle of a CIM instance is  
 2510 directly tied to the existence of a managed object in the managed environment that is represented by the  
 2511 CIM instance; see 6.6.2. A CIM instance can only be created if a respective managed object can be  
 2512 created (or added to the managed environment) such that the new CIM instance representing that  
 2513 managed object conforms with all values given by the input CIM instance with initialization constraints  
 2514 applied; for implementation requirements on instance creation operations, see 9.3.3.2.2.

#### 2515 **7.13.3.3.4 Specification of operations requirements for instance modification operations**

2516 The operations specifications (see 7.13.3.3.1) allow modification of some or all property values of an  
 2517 instance. An operations specification also can specify semantics for the instance modification operations  
 2518 with respect to the resulting modified instance. Profiles may specify requirements for implementing  
 2519 specific modification values (see 7.13.2.11.3).

2520 As part of operation requirements for instance modification operations, profiles may specify

- 2521 • designations for specific properties to be either modifiable or non-modifiable.
  - 2522 – Key properties are non-modifiable and shall not be designated as modifiable
  - 2523 – Designations already specified in base adaptations should not be repeated or changed
  - 2524 – Through such designations profiles may limit the effects of modification operations such  
 2525 that only the values of certain properties are affected.
- 2526 • preconditions that an input value is required to be provided in the input instance, or that an input  
 2527 value is not permitted to be provided in the input instance; such preconditions may be tied to  
 2528 other conditions specified by the profile.

2529 NOTE Operations specification define that provided values need to be reflected in the created  
 2530 instance, and how values of properties for which the input instance does not exhibit a value are  
 2531 to be determined for the created instance. For that reason the reinterpretation of specific values  
 2532 of input properties that is possible for input parameters of methods (see 7.13.3.2.2) is not  
 2533 admissible for operations.

- 2534 • the effect of property modifications with respect to the managed object to be modified in the  
 2535 managed environment unless these are apparent (for example by respective mappings of  
 2536 specific property values to respective states of the managed object)

2537 NOTE An operations specification can specify semantics for the instance modification operations with  
 2538 respect to the resulting modified target instance.

- 2539 • error reporting requirements as detailed in 7.13.3.3.6.

2540 For the modification of CIM instances it is of overriding importance that a CIM instance is the  
 2541 representation of (an aspect of) a managed object in the managed environment; see 6.6.2. A CIM  
 2542 instance can only be modified if the managed object represented by that CIM instance can be modified  
 2543 such that the CIM instance representing that modified managed object conforms with all values given by  
 2544 the input CIM instance; for implementation requirements on instance modification operations, see  
 2545 9.3.3.2.3.

#### 2546 **7.13.3.3.5 Specification of operation requirements for deprecated operations**

2547 Profiles shall not define operation requirements for operations that are marked as deprecated in the  
 2548 operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1), except within revisions of existing profiles that retain an  
 2549 operation requirement for an operation that was marked as deprecated in the operations specification  
 2550 after the original version of the profile was released.

**2551 7.13.3.3.6 Specification of the reporting of operation errors**

2552 The operation requirements and method requirements specified by a profile should contain error reporting  
2553 requirements.

2554 Each error reporting requirement shall address a particular error situation.

2555 Each error reporting requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that determines the  
2556 requirement for implementing the error reporting requirement as part of implementing the method or  
2557 operation.

2558 Because in profiles error reporting requirements are a part of operation requirements or method  
2559 requirements, each error reporting requirement specified in a profile shall be related to an error reporting  
2560 requirement specified by the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1) as part of the definition of the  
2561 operation. This also applies for method requirements if the method invocations are initiated through an  
2562 operation; otherwise, error reporting requirements for methods shall be specified in context of an error  
2563 reporting requirement established by the operations specification for method invocations.

2564 The error situations addressed by error reporting requirements can overlap. For example, if an instance is  
2565 not accessible, that may be caused by security reasons, by technical reasons or by other kinds of failures.  
2566 Profiles may specify error reporting requirements with a relative order to each other, such that a particular  
2567 error reporting requirement applies before other error reporting requirements. For example, in the case  
2568 where an instance is not accessible for several reasons such as security reasons and several technical  
2569 reasons, a profile could state that the error reporting requirement for reporting the security reason is to be  
2570 applied before any other error reporting requirement.

2571 Note that the operations specification may already have established a relative order among the error  
2572 reporting requirements that it specifies. In this case, if the profile establishes a order among the profile  
2573 specified error reporting requirements, that shall be in compliance with the order specified by the  
2574 operations specification.

2575 Profile should define each error reporting requirement through one or more standard messages, as  
2576 follows:

2577 • If the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1) defines error reporting requirements by means of  
2578 standard messages, each error reporting requirement shall reference a standard error message  
2579 (that is, a standard message defined in a [DSP0228](#) conformant message registry with a type of  
2580 "ERROR") required by the operations specification for the subject operation that addresses the  
2581 error situation to be reported.

2582 • If the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1) defines error reporting requirements by means of  
2583 CIM status codes, each error reporting requirement shall reference a standard error message  
2584 defined in [DSP8016](#) that is compatible to a CIM status code required by the operations  
2585 specification that is applicable in the error situation to be reported. A compatible standard error  
2586 message shall exhibit — through the value of the CIMSTATUSCODE element — a CIM status  
2587 code that applies in the error situation, and shall itself be applicable in the error situation to be  
2588 reported.

2589 • In cases where a mapping of CIM status codes to messages defined in [DSP8016](#) is not  
2590 possible, an error reporting requirements may directly reference the CIM status code instead of  
2591 a standard error message.

2592 • In addition, in all previous cases, an error reporting requirement may refer to one or more  
2593 additional standard error messages that apply in the error situation to be reported. These  
2594 messages are typically defined in a message registry that is separate from that used by the  
2595 operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1) and that contains definitions of messages that are  
2596 more specific with respect to the domain addressed by the profile.

- 2597
- 2598
- 2599
- 2600
- 2601
- 2602
- 2603
- 2604
- 2605
- 2606
- 2607
- 2608
- Profiles may provide additional descriptions as part of error reporting requirements that detail the error situation in the context of which an error reporting requirement applies with respect to the management domain addressed by the profile. However, such additional descriptions are to be understood as implementation hints as to when — with respect to the management domain — an error reporting requirement applies. The additional descriptions shall not be understood as a constraint on the error situation that is described by the standard error messages and CIM status codes. Particularly, clients receiving an error indicator in the form of a set of standard error messages and a CIM status code shall only rely on the description provided directly through these elements. Clients shall not make assumptions based on the additional descriptions provided in profiles, other than that these describe single potentially possible error situations out of the typically much larger set described by the standard error messages and the CIM status code.

2609 NOTE The implementation requirements resulting from error reporting requirements are detailed in 9.3.3.4.

#### 2610 **7.13.3.3.7 Operation requirements related to associations**

2611 A profile shall define operation requirements for operations that enable association traversal as part of adaptations of classes that are referenced by association adaptations; typically such classes are ordinary classes.

2614 The requirements for association traversal operations with respect to a particular association adaptation shall be specified separately as part of each referenced adaptation.

2616 The requirements for association traversal operations of a particular adaptation of a class referenced by one or more association adaptations may be specified separately for each referencing association adaptation.

2619 For example, consider a profile defines a System adaptation of the CIM\_System class, a Device adaptation of the CIM\_LogicalDevice class, and a SystemDevice adaptation of the CIM\_SystemDevice association associating the System adaptation and the Device adaptation. If the association traversal operation requirements specified on the System adaptation with respect to the SystemDevice association may differ from those specified on the Device adaptation, they need to be separately specified.

2624 Furthermore, if the profile had also defined a SystemPackaging adaptation of the CIM\_SystemPackaging class, and if the association traversal operation requirements specified on the System adaptation targeting the Device adaptation through the SystemPackaging adaptation differ from those through the SystemDevice association adaptation, they need to be separately specified as well.

2628 There is no implied requirement for an association adaptation to be implemented if one or more of the referenced adaptations are implemented. Similarly, the implementation of referenced adaptations is not implicitly required if an association adaptation is implemented. For that reason, profiles should ensure that all adaptations required to express a certain relationship are required as a whole; the preferred modeling approach in this case are features (see 7.15).

2633 For example, extending the previously described situation with a mandatory System adaptation associated via a SystemDependency association adaptation to a Device adaptation, a profile should ensure that if the Device adaptation is implemented, then the SystemDevice adaptation is required to be implemented as well. For example, this could be achieved by defining the SystemDevice adaptation with the conditional exclusive requirement level, with the condition stating that the optional Device adaptation is implemented. Another more explicit approach could be defining an optional DevicesExposed feature, and define both the SystemDevice and the Device adaptations as conditional exclusive, with a feature implementation condition on the DevicesExposed feature.

#### 2641 **7.13.3.3.8 Management domain context for operations**

2642 For write operations (for example, the ModifyInstance( ) operation defined in [DSP0223](#)), it is generally not sufficient to only describe the expected state of CIM instances after the operation execution completes.

2644 Instead, profiles should detail the required changes on managed objects in the managed environment  
2645 that cause corresponding changes in the CIM instances that represent the affected managed objects.

2646 For example, if an Example Fan profile requires that a fan is active as an effect of executing the  
2647 `ModifyInstance( )` operation, that profile shall explicitly state as part of the required operation semantics  
2648 that the identified fan shall be activated if the value of the `EnabledState` property in the input instance is  
2649 2 (Enabled), instead of repeating requirements from the operations specification (such as that the  
2650 instance identified by the input instance shall adopt the values from the input instance) and/or the  
2651 schema. The purpose of this requirement is to precisely instruct implementers about the desired behavior  
2652 in the managed environment, and not just about expected changes in the model representation of the  
2653 managed environment. Of course, the property requirements for the `EnabledState` property of the Fan  
2654 adaptation need to separately state that the value shall be 2 (Enabled) if and only if the fan is active. For  
2655 further rationale, see 6.6.3.

#### 2656 7.13.3.4 Definition of instance requirements

2657 An instance requirement defines how (and in some cases also under which conditions) managed objects  
2658 are to be represented by adaptation instances.

2659 The definition of an adaptation in a profile models a particular managed object type or an aspect thereof;  
2660 see 7.13.2.2. The implementation selects managed objects for representation. The definition of the  
2661 adaptation implies the instance requirement to represent the selected managed objects as respective  
2662 adaptation instances; profiles are not required to restate this implied instance requirement.

2663 In addition, profiles may define the conditions in the managed environment that require the exposure of  
2664 adaptation instances in namespaces; however, profiles should exercise care when stating such instance  
2665 requirements in order to avoid requirements that cannot be satisfied.

2666 For example, in the context of an Example Fan profile, consider an instance requirement phrased as  
2667 follows: "Each fan shall be represented by a Fan instance." (where "fan" refers to fans in managed  
2668 environments, and "Fan" refers to the Fan adaptation defined in that Example Fan profile). It is possible  
2669 that some fans in the managed environment do not exhibit a management instrumentation that would  
2670 enable a profile implementation to actually discover and control those fans. In these cases a profile  
2671 implementation would not be able to comply with the specified instance requirement, because it can  
2672 neither detect nor manage those fans without management instrumentation.

#### 2673 7.13.3.5 Metric requirements

2674 Profiles may define metric requirements. Metric requirements shall be stated as part of class adaptations.  
2675 These adaptations may be based on adaptations defined in the same profile, or in other profiles such as  
2676 the *Base Metrics Profile* (see [DSP1053](#)).

2677 The metric requirements shall be based on referenced metric definitions that are defined in metric  
2678 registries. Besides formal requirements for the specification of metric definitions, [DSP8020](#) also defines  
2679 requirements for the implementation of metrics. These implementation requirements apply for profile  
2680 implementations if a profile defines metric requirements by referencing metric definitions in metric  
2681 registries that are compliant with [DSP8020](#).

2682 If necessary, as part of their metric requirements within adaptations profiles may amend the referenced  
2683 metric definitions from metric registries. For example, such amendments may be necessary in order to  
2684 refine the metric semantics and establish the context with the incorporating adaptation. In particular, this  
2685 is required in the context of more generically defined metrics in metric registries. On the other hand,  
2686 specific metric definitions in metric registries in many cases already define all necessary implementation  
2687 requirements, such that referencing the registry-based definition along with the implementation  
2688 requirements imposed by [DSP8020](#) are sufficient for the purposes of the subject profile.

2689 Profiles shall apply one of the following approaches for the definition of metric requirements:

- 2690
- Managed object only (requires [DSP1053](#), with either direct or indirect reference)
- 2691 With this approach, the metric requirements are defined as part of an adaptation that models  
2692 the managed object type for which the metric applies, by
- basing that adaptation on the MonitoredElement adaptation defined in the Base Metrics  
2693 profile (see [DSP1053](#)), and
  - referencing in the same adaptation one or more metrics defined in a metric registry.  
2695
- 2696 This is the most compact approach because most of the metric related implementation  
2697 requirements are implied from [DSP1053](#). Specifically, the MonitoredElement adaptation from  
2698 the Base Metrics profile implies implementation requirements for other adaptations defined in  
2699 the Base Metrics profile, such as the BaseMetricDefinition adaptation, the BaseMetricValue  
2700 adaptation, and their relationships. The adaptations from the Base Metrics profile also define  
2701 how requirements from the metric definition in the metric registry apply in their context.
- Managed object and metric definition (requires [DSP1053](#), with either direct or indirect reference)
- 2702 With this approach, the metric requirements are defined as part of a metric adaptation (an  
2703 adaptation of the CIM\_BaseMetricDefinition class or a subclass of that) by
- basing that adaptation on the BaseMetricDefinition adaptation or on the  
2706 AggregationMetricDefinition adaptation defined in the Base Metrics profile (see [DSP1053](#)),
  - referencing in the same adaptation one or more metric definitions defined in a metric  
2707 registry (see [DSP8020](#) for requirements on the specification of metric registries and their  
2708 use), and
  - defining one or more adaptations based on the MonitoredElement adaptation defined in the  
2710 Base Metrics profile modeling the entities for which the metrics apply, along with related  
2711 association adaptations based on the MetricDefForME adaptation defined in the Base  
2712 Metric profile that relate the managed elements with their metric definitions.  
2713
- 2714 This is a less compact, but more flexible, approach. In addition to its own requirements, the  
2715 BaseMetricDefinition adaptation from the Base Metrics profile implies additional implementation  
2716 requirements for related adaptations defined in the Base Metrics profile, such as the  
2717 BaseMetricValue adaptation and its relationships. However, with this approach the subject  
2718 profile is required to establish the context to one or more managed elements through its  
2719 adaptations based of the MetricDefForME adaptation. Again, the adaptations from the Base  
2720 Metrics profile also define how requirements from the metric definition in the metric registry  
2721 apply in their context.
- Complete approach ([DSP1053](#) not required, but possible)
- 2722 With this approach, the subject profile defines all aspects of the metric requirements through  
2723 one or more adaptations, and with or without referencing other profiles. At least one the metric  
2724 related adaptations is required to be based on a metric definition in a metric registry, and  
2725 establish the usage context of that registry-based metric definition for the modeled managed  
2726 object types.  
2727
- 2728 This is the most flexible approach. It does not require referencing [DSP1053](#), but requires the  
2729 most extensive definitions in the subject profile. The subject profile may or may not define its  
2730 metric-related adaptations based on adaptations defined in [DSP1053](#) or in other profiles. If so,  
2731 then the requirements of the base adaptations are imposed as usual. If not, then the subject  
2732 profile itself must define all metric-related requirements such as interpretation rules or value  
2733 constraints of certain metric-related properties, or as relationships between metric-related  
2734 adaptations.

### 2735 7.13.3.6 Concurrency requirements

2736 Each profile should define concurrency requirements with regard to instances of adaptations.

2737 For example, a profile defining requirements for a method or operation may require exclusive access to a  
2738 subset of the managed environment such that interference from other activities performed on that subset  
2739 are serialized. However, care should be exercised in establishing such requirements, because they might  
2740 reduce the set of managed environments for which the profile can be implemented.

### 2741 7.13.3.7 ACID requirements

2742 Profile authors should be aware that protocols, WBEM server infrastructure, and adaptation  
2743 implementations affect the behavior with respect to ACID properties. A profile may define ACID  
2744 requirements for operations and methods specified by the profile; if specified, ACID requirements shall be  
2745 defined at the level of the profile-defined interface between a WBEM client (or a WBEM listener) and a  
2746 WBEM server. Profile-defined ACID requirements shall be stated in a protocol-agnostic manner.

2747 NOTE ACID properties for operations and methods are defined in operations specifications (see 7.13.3.3.1).

2748 If profiles define ACID requirements, these shall not contradict other specification rules established by this  
2749 guide, such as requirements for the specification of instance requirements (see 7.13.3.4) or that for the  
2750 specification of operations requirements (see 7.13.3.3).

## 2751 7.13.4 Requirements for the definition of indication adaptations

### 2752 7.13.4.1 General

2753 The requirements defined this subclause apply in addition to the requirements defined in 7.13.2 for the  
2754 definition of adaptations of all kinds of classes.

2755 The approach detailed in this subclause aims at relieving profiles that define indications from having to  
2756 define many of the infrastructure elements related to indications, such as indication filters and filter  
2757 collections. This is because such infrastructure elements are already implied by definitions of [DSP1054](#).  
2758 Particularly in the case of alert indications, the specification effort in profiles is typically reduced to just  
2759 define an adaptation based on the AlertIndication adaptation defined [DSP1054](#), along with a reference to  
2760 an alert message for each event that is to be reported.

2761 A profile that defines indications may reference [DSP1054](#); if a profile references [DSP1054](#), it shall comply  
2762 with the requirements defined in [DSP1054](#) for referencing profiles. A profile referencing [DSP1054](#) may  
2763 define its indication adaptations based on those defined in [DSP1054](#). As usual, the "based on"  
2764 relationship to basic indication adaptations defined in [DSP1054](#) may be indirect, with intermediate other  
2765 base adaptations. In either case, the requirements of the base indication adaptation defined in [DSP1054](#)  
2766 implicitly applies, including the requirements for related indication filters and filter collections.

2767 An alert indication adaptation that is defined based on the AlertIndication adaptation defined in [DSP1054](#)  
2768 may reference alert messages defined in a message registry. For each message reference, the alert  
2769 indication adaptation shall state the message registry reference (see 7.12) referring to the defining  
2770 message registry, and uniquely identify the message by stating its message id. The message id is the  
2771 concatenation of the value of the PREFIX attribute and the SEQUENCE\_NUMBER attribute from the  
2772 MESSAGE\_ID element that defines the alert message within the message registry. Furthermore, the alert  
2773 indication adaptation shall specify how the definitions of the referenced alert messages apply, unless  
2774 such information is already sufficiently provided by the definition of the AlertIndication adaptation defined  
2775 in [DSP1054](#), by the respective alert message definitions, by the Message Registry XML Schema  
2776 Specification (see [DSP8020](#)), or by a combination of these definitions. For rules on how to conform with  
2777 these requirements in profile specification documents, see 10.4.7.4.3.



#### 2778 7.13.4.2 Indication-generation requirements

2779 For each indication adaptation one or more indication-generation requirements shall be defined. Each  
2780 indication-generation requirement shall express the situation that causes the indication to be generated;  
2781 in most situations such descriptions just refer the event reported by the indication, but additional  
2782 constraints may apply.

2783 The basic indication adaptations defined in [DSP1054](#) already define indication-generation requirements.  
2784 As with any requirement defined by a base adaptation, the indication-generation requirements defined by  
2785 base indication adaptations (such as those defined in [DSP1054](#)) implicitly apply in context derived  
2786 indication adaptations; however, if needed, a derived indication adaptation may refine the indication-  
2787 generation requirements of its base indication adaptation(s).

#### 2788 7.13.5 Abstract class adaptation

2789 Abstract class adaptations are class adaptations with an implementation type of "abstract". Any class that  
2790 is not an abstract class adaptation is termed a concrete class adaptation.

2791 One purpose of abstract class adaptations is to serve as a common endpoint for generic association  
2792 adaptations, such that the relationship applies to any class adaptation based on the abstract class  
2793 adaptation and the definition of specific association adaptations for every possible endpoint can be  
2794 avoided.

2795 Another purpose of abstract class adaptations is grouping the common requirements of other class  
2796 adaptations. Instead of repeating the common requirements in each specific class adaptation the  
2797 common requirements are specified in an abstract class adaptation, and each specific class adaptation is  
2798 based on that abstract class adaptation.

2799 Abstract class adaptations are not directly implemented; instead, their requirements are propagated into  
2800 class adaptations that are based on them. For details, see clause 9.

2801 Each class adaptation adapting an abstract class from a schema shall be designated as an abstract class  
2802 adaptation, with one exception:

2803 A profile may define a concrete (non-abstract) adaptation of an abstract class, if in addition it states a  
2804 concrete class derived from the adapted class that shall be implemented if the profile implementation  
2805 does not need a more specific derived class. For example, a profile may define an XxxComponent  
2806 adaptation of the (abstract) CIM\_Component class and state that the CIM\_ConcreteComponent  
2807 class shall be implemented if the implementation does not require a more specific association  
2808 derived from CIM\_Component. This specification approach enables implementations to define their  
2809 own implementation classes derived directly from the abstract CIM\_Component association (instead  
2810 of being forced to base their implementation class on the concrete CIM\_ConcreteComponent  
2811 association).

#### 2812 7.13.6 Trivial class adaptation

2813 A trivial class adaptation does not define additional requirements beyond those defined by its adapted  
2814 class and its base adaptations. Trivial class adaptations typically are defined as a point of reference for  
2815 other profiles, such that referencing profiles can define adaptations based on them. Another typical use of  
2816 a trivial class adaptation is introducing a concrete equivalent of an abstract class adaptation in the case  
2817 where no additional requirements need to be defined beyond those defined by the abstract class  
2818 adaptation.

#### 2819 7.13.7 Examples of class adaptations

2820 An example of a simple adaptation that does not establish additional constraints is a profile that  
2821 addresses the management domain of computer system management, adapts the CIM\_ComputerSystem  
2822 class modeling computer systems, and does not specify constraints on properties. In this case a

2823 conformant implementation of that profile's adaptation of the CIM\_ComputerSystem class is only required  
2824 to show non-Null values for the properties exposed by the CIM\_ComputerSystem class that are either key  
2825 properties, or that are properties with the REQUIRED qualifier having a value of True.

2826 Typical examples of adaptations that define additional constraints are:

- 2827 • A profile addressing the management of systems defining an adaptation of the  
2828 CIM\_ComputerSystem class for the representation of systems, and defining requirements and  
2829 constraints only for a subset of the properties exposed by the CIM\_ComputerSystem class.
- 2830 • A profile addressing the management of system memory defining an adaptation of the  
2831 CIM\_Memory class for the representation of system memory, and constraining that the value of  
2832 the EnabledState property shall be 2 (Enabled).
- 2833 • A profile addressing the management of disks defining an adaptation of the CIM\_StorageExtent  
2834 class for the representation of RAID disks, and constraining that the value of the  
2835 ErrorMethodology property shall match the pattern "RAID3|RAID4|RAID5".
- 2836 • A profile addressing the management of floppy disks defining an adaptation of the  
2837 CIM\_DiskDrive class for the representation of floppy disk drives, and constraining that each  
2838 instance of the CIM\_DiskDrive class representing a floppy drive shall be associated with the  
2839 instance of the CIM\_ComputerSystem class representing the containing system.

2840 An example for multiple adaptations of a class in one profile is a profile defining an adaptation of the  
2841 CIM\_AllocationCapabilities class to model the allocation capabilities of a resource pool and to model the  
2842 mutability of resource allocations.

2843 An example for multiple adaptations of a class in multiple profiles is the CIM\_System class that is adapted  
2844 by many profiles to model very different forms of systems such as general purpose systems, network  
2845 switches, storage arrays, or storage controllers. Each of these adaptations is implemented separately,  
2846 and these implementations need to coexist within one WBEM server.

2847 An example for multiple adaptations of a class in multiple profiles with adaptation dependencies is the  
2848 adaptation of the CIM\_Processor class by two profiles:

- 2849 • A generic CPU profile defining an adaptation of the CIM\_Processor class modeling processors  
2850 in general

2851 For example, this profile could be implemented for physical processors in physical systems,  
2852 exploiting management instrumentation provided by software components installed in the  
2853 physical system. The set of instances controlled by that profile implementation would be  
2854 CIM\_Processor instances representing host processors.

- 2855 • A processor resource virtualization profile defining an adaptation of the CIM\_Processor class  
2856 modeling virtual processors, and requiring that this adaptation be based on that of the  
2857 referenced generic CPU profile

2858 Typically this implies a separate profile implementation of the referenced generic CPU profile,  
2859 exploiting management instrumentation provided by the virtualization platform in the context of  
2860 which virtual processors exist. The set of instances provided by that profile implementation  
2861 would be CIM\_Processor instances representing virtual processors. The advantage resulting  
2862 from the reuse of the CIM\_Processor adaptation is that CIM\_Processor instances representing  
2863 virtual processors now are visible through the interface defined by the generic CPU profile;  
2864 consequently, a client could manage the virtual processors through that interface in the same  
2865 way as in the physical case. However, it should be noted that in this case the set of  
2866 CIM\_Processor instances is disjoint from that representing the host processors in the physical  
2867 case.

2868 As detailed in clause 9, a profile implementation is required to conform to the definitions of the profile and  
2869 those of referenced profiles. More specifically, an implementation of an adaptation is required to satisfy all  
2870 requirements of all base adaptations, including instance requirements.

## 2871 **7.14 Requirements for profile registration**

2872 The CIM schema defines classes that enable the representation of implemented profile versions and their  
2873 relationships, such as the CIM\_RegisteredProfile class and the CIM\_ElementConformsToProfile and  
2874 CIM\_ReferencedProfile associations. The Profile Registration profile (see [DSP1033](#)) defines a model for  
2875 the representation of implemented profile versions and their relationships by defining the use of these  
2876 classes; see [DSP1033](#) for details.

2877 Concrete profiles except the Profile Registration profile (see [DSP1033](#)) shall reference the Profile  
2878 Registration profile (see [DSP1033](#)) as a mandatory profile.

2879 This implies that the central class adaptation (see 7.9.3.2) conforms to the requirements for central  
2880 classes defined by the Profile Registration profile (see [DSP1033](#)), that the scoping class adaptation (see  
2881 7.9.3.3) conforms to the requirements for scoping classes defined by the Profile Registration profile (see  
2882 [DSP1033](#)), and that the adaptation of the CIM\_RegisteredProfile class modeling the profile registration of  
2883 the subject profile conforms with the requirements of the CIM\_RegisteredProfile "profile class" defined by  
2884 the Profile Registration profile (see [DSP1033](#)).

2885 NOTE 1 The requirements for central classes and scoping classes defined by the Profile Registration profile (see  
2886 [DSP1033](#)) imply the implementation of a profile advertisement methodology.

2887 NOTE 2 It is expected that a future version of the Profile Registration profile (see [DSP1033](#)) is defined based on  
2888 version 1.1 (or later) of this guide, and defines adaptations such as a CentralElement, a ScopingElement  
2889 and a ProfileRegistration adaptation that could serve as base adaptations for the central class adaptation,  
2890 the scoping class adaptation and the profile registration adaptation of referencing profiles. This will allow  
2891 defining the requirements related to profile registration and to central class adaptations and scoping class  
2892 adaptations more precisely.

2893 Abstract profiles may reference [DSP1033](#) as a mandatory profile; if so, the requirements of [DSP1033](#)  
2894 apply for the (implicit) profile implementation of the abstract profile as part of a concrete profile derived  
2895 from the abstract profile, as well as for the profile implementation of the concrete profile itself because  
2896 that is also required to reference [DSP1033](#) as a mandatory profile.

2897 NOTE 1 This enables clients to be written against an abstract profile without requiring knowledge about the  
2898 implemented concrete profile derived from the abstract profile.

2899 NOTE 2 Version 1.0 of this guide was unclear about whether or not abstract profiles were allowed to refer to  
2900 [DSP1033](#).

2901 In any case, the requirements of 7.9.3.2, 7.9.3.3 and 7.9.3.4 apply.

## 2902 **7.15 Requirements for the definition of features**

### 2903 **7.15.1 Introduction**

2904 A feature is a named profile element; the rules defined in 7.2.2 apply. A feature groups the decisions for  
2905 the implementation of one or more profile elements into a single decision. This grouping is established by  
2906 defining the implementation of other profile element conditional on the implementation of the feature.

### 2907 **7.15.2 General feature requirements**

2908 A feature should bear a relationship to functionality in the profile or in the management domain. Profiles  
2909 shall provide a functional description of each defined feature.

2910 Profiles should preferably define a feature instead of a chain of interdependent definitions in order to  
2911 make decision points more explicit for implementers and ease the discovery of implementation  
2912 capabilities for clients.

### 2913 **7.15.3 Feature name**

2914 A profile shall define a name for each feature it defines; the name shall be in conformance with the  
2915 naming conventions defined in 7.2.2.

### 2916 **7.15.4 Feature requirement level**

2917 Profiles shall define their own features with a requirement level of optional, conditional or conditional  
2918 exclusive.

2919 Profiles may define constraints on the implementation of features defined within the same or within  
2920 referenced profiles; for example, a referencing profile may require implementation of a feature that is  
2921 defined as optional in a referenced profile.

### 2922 **7.15.5 Feature granularity**

2923 Feature granularity affects the discoverability and availability of features. Two kinds of feature granularity  
2924 are possible: Profile granularity and instance granularity.

- 2925 • Features with profile granularity are either generally available or not available within a particular  
2926 profile implementation. Feature discoverability is defined at a global level, such that if the  
2927 feature is available, it is available for all instances affected by definitions that depend in the  
2928 feature.
- 2929 • Features with instance granularity are available only for certain instances. Feature  
2930 discoverability is defined at an adaptation instance level, such that the availability of the feature  
2931 is indicated only for certain adaptation instances that conform to additional requirements.

2932 Profiles shall define the granularity of each feature by indicating whether the feature is defined with either  
2933 profile granularity or with instance granularity; if defined with instance granularity, profile shall state an  
2934 adaptation and the conditions for which instances of that adaptation the feature is required to be  
2935 available.

2936 An example of a feature with profile granularity might be a FanStateManagement feature of an  
2937 Example Fan profile. If the feature is available (and discoverable for example by means of a property  
2938 value in a global capabilities instance), fan state management is available for any instance of that profile's  
2939 Fan adaptation.

2940 In another example (detailed in 7.15.1), a FanSpeedSensor feature might be defined with a granularity of  
2941 "Fan instance" and conditioned (with a managed environment condition) to be implemented only if the  
2942 managed environment contains fans with sensors. In this case, the implementation of the feature would  
2943 provide — and a client would be able to discover — feature-defined functionality only for those instances  
2944 of the Fan adaptation that represent fans with sensors, while other instances of the Fan adaptation would  
2945 not be affected by the feature implementation, and the presence of the feature could not be discovered  
2946 through those instances.

### 2947 **7.15.6 Feature discovery**

2948 Feature discovery aims at enabling clients to discover the availability of features.

2949 It is highly recommended that a profile defines at least one mechanism that facilitates discovery of a  
2950 feature availability as part of a profile implementation.

2951 Each discovery mechanism shall be defined such that the availability and the unavailability of the feature  
2952 can be discovered.

2953 If more than one discovery mechanism is defined for a particular feature, one of them shall be designated  
2954 as preferred.

2955 An example of a feature discovery mechanism is a specific value constraint for a property value in a  
2956 capabilities instance. For example, an Example Fan profile could define the preferred discovery path for  
2957 the availability of its FanElementNameEdit feature by requiring that if the FanElementNameEdit feature is  
2958 available for a fan then there is an associated instance of the CIM\_EnabledLogicalElementCapabilities  
2959 class for which the value of the ElementNameEdit property is True. These capabilities instances could be  
2960 combined into one shared instance that is associated to those Fan instances for which the feature is  
2961 available.

2962 The discovery mechanism described in the previous paragraph could be modified for features with  
2963 instance granularity by requiring specific capabilities instances instead of global ones.

2964 Another example of a discovery mechanism applicable for features with instance granularity is the  
2965 presence of an associated instance in the context of an instance for which the feature can apply. For  
2966 example, this is the case for the Fan instances described in the last example in 7.15.5, but only in the  
2967 case where the FanSpeedSensor feature is supported for those fans that are represented by Fan  
2968 instances with an associated FanSpeedSensor instance.

### 2969 **7.15.7 Feature requirements**

2970 Feature requirements are the implementation requirements resulting from the commitment to implement a  
2971 feature. The commitment can result from a deliberate decision of the implementer, but in the case of  
2972 conditional features can also be the result of a True condition. Feature requirements are not defined as  
2973 an integral part of the feature. Instead, they are specified as conditional requirements for other profile  
2974 definitions such as referenced profiles, adaptations, property requirements, method requirements,  
2975 operation requirements, or metric requirements. This approach enables the specification of profile  
2976 elements that depend on more than one feature.

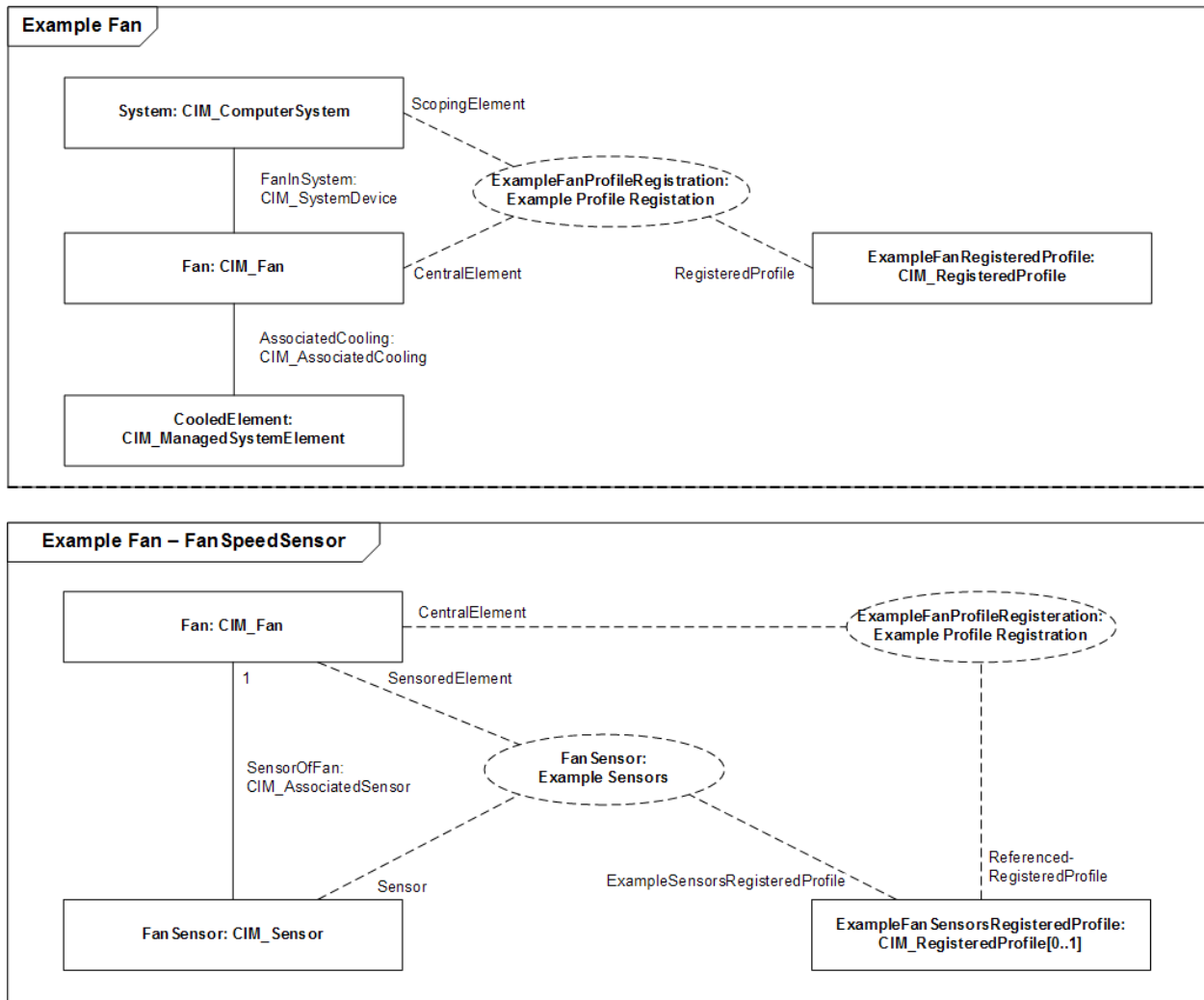
2977 A profile shall define feature requirements in terms of requiring otherwise optional profile elements as  
2978 conditional or conditional exclusive with feature implementation conditions (see 7.4.3), or by defining  
2979 additional constraints. Profiles shall use the following mechanisms to define feature requirements:

- 2980 • Defining profile elements as conditional or conditional exclusive with respect to the feature  
2981 implementation; this applies to
  - 2982 – profile references
  - 2983 – otherwise optional, conditional or conditional exclusive profile elements within referenced  
2984 profiles, such as features, adaptations, property requirements, or method requirements
  - 2985 – adaptations
  - 2986 – base adaptations
  - 2987 – property requirements in adaptations
  - 2988 – method requirements in adaptations
  - 2989 – operation requirements in adaptations
  - 2990 – error reporting requirements in adaptations
  - 2991 – metric requirements in adaptations
- 2992 • Defining constraints that depend on implementation of the feature

2993 NOTE Clause 9 defines requirements for implementations of profiles, including those of conditional profile  
2994 elements. See clause 9 for the implementation requirements resulting from features.

2995 **7.15.8 Feature example**

2996 Figure 8 shows two DMTF collaboration structure diagrams that detail the collaboration defined by an  
 2997 Example Fan profile. For respective diagrams of the Example Profile Registration profile (referenced in  
 2998 both parts of Figure 8) and an Example Sensors profile (referenced in the lower part of Figure 8), see  
 2999 7.13.2.1. For details on DMTF collaboration structure diagrams, see 8.3.4.



3000  
 3001

**Figure 8 – Examples of DMTF collaboration structure diagrams**

3002 The upper diagram in Figure 8 depicts the mandatory class adaptations defined by the Example Fan  
 3003 profile, and how adaptations of the Example Fan profile are based on the adaptations defined in the  
 3004 Example Profile Registration profile. It also shows implied instance requirements: For example, the Fan  
 3005 adaptation is based on the CIM\_Fan class as indicated by the class name that follows the colon. The  
 3006 implied multiplicity [\*] of the Fan adaptation indicates that zero or more instances are required to exist at  
 3007 any time. The association end multiplicity of 1 shown at the upper end of the SensorOfFan association  
 3008 adaptation in the lower diagram of Figure 8 indicates that each fan sensor provides sensor information for  
 3009 exactly one fan.

3010 The lower diagram in Figure 8 depicts the class adaptations of the Example Fan profile that contain  
 3011 requirements of its FanSpeedSensor feature. For example, the Example Fan profile defines a relationship  
 3012 to the Example Sensors profile, as depicted by the ExampleFanSensorsRegisteredProfile adaptation on

3013 the right side with a multiplicity of [0..1]; this means that there are definitions in the Example Fan profile  
3014 that under certain conditions rely on definitions in the Example Sensors profile.

3015 In this example, it is assumed that the Example Fan profile defines a FanSpeedSensor feature that is  
3016 conditional on the existence of fans with fan speed sensors in the managed environment; this is an  
3017 example of a managed environment condition (see 7.4.7). Consequently an implementer who implements  
3018 the Example Fan profile for a particular type of managed environment (for example, computer systems  
3019 produced by a particular vendor) would have to determine whether fans with sensors potentially exist in  
3020 that type of managed environment. If this is the case, then the managed environment condition is True,  
3021 and the Example Fan profile requires the implementation of the FanSpeedSensor feature.

3022 NOTE It is a typical situation that — as in this example — the implementation of a feature is only required if the  
3023 managed environment potentially exhibits a particular characteristic (for example, potentially contains fans  
3024 with sensors). At implementation time the implementer needs to check whether the characteristic is  
3025 exhibited by the type of managed environment for which the profile is implemented. If that is the case, then  
3026 the feature driven implementation requirements become effective and need to be implemented.

3027 Furthermore, in this example it is assumed that individual fans in the managed environment may or may  
3028 not have sensors. However, this cannot be expressed in the CSD, and in any case needs to be stated in  
3029 the form of normative definitions in the Example Fan profile. A further assumption in this example is that  
3030 the Example Fan profile defines the FanSpeedSensor feature with a granularity of "Fan instance," and  
3031 defines the preferred discovery mechanism for the feature by stating that the feature is supported for a  
3032 particular Fan instance if a FanSensor instance is associated through a SensorOfFan association  
3033 adaptation instance. The instance granularity of the feature in effect requires the profile implementation to  
3034 provide feature-required elements only for those Fan instances that represent a fan with a sensor.

3035 NOTE Features with instance granularity allow mandating presence of the feature only for the CIM representation  
3036 of specific managed objects that exhibit a certain behavior or functional element (such as fans with  
3037 sensors). Feature implementations need to detect and respectively handle these situations at runtime.  
3038 Typically, feature discovery for features with instance granularity is also defined on a per-instance basis,  
3039 such that from a client perspective the feature is present only for instances exposing the characteristic.

3040 A client would discover the presence of the FanSpeedSensor feature for a particular Fan instance by  
3041 traversing from the Fan instance through SensorOfFan to FanSensor instances; the presence of such  
3042 instances would indicate the presence of the FanSpeedSensor feature for the Fan instance.

3043 An alternate discovery path for the FanSpeedSensor feature could be defined through the  
3044 ExampleFanSensorsRegisteredProfile instance associated through the CIM\_ReferencedProfile  
3045 association to the ExampleFanRegisteredProfile instance representing the implemented version of the  
3046 Example Fan profile. This is depicted in the lower part of Figure 8 on the right side by showing the  
3047 ExampleSensorsRegisteredProfile adaptation of the Example Fan profile based on the  
3048 ReferencedRegisteredProfile adaptation of the Example Profile Registration profile. The  
3049 ReferencedRegisteredProfile adaptation in turn requires the implementation of the  
3050 CIM\_ReferencedProfile association to the CentralElement adaptation. Thus, a client inspecting an  
3051 implemented version of the Example Fan profile as represented by a ExampleFanRegisteredProfile  
3052 instance can detect that the FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented by traversing the  
3053 CIM\_ReferencedProfile association to a ExampleFanSensorsRegisteredProfile instance. If that instance  
3054 exists, this indicates that the FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented in general; however, because in  
3055 this example the FanSpeedSensor feature is defined with a granularity of "Fan instance", the feature is  
3056 available only for those Fan instances that represent fans with sensors.

3057 If the FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented, then all other profile definitions that are conditional on this  
3058 feature effectively become implementation-required; see clause 9 for an algorithm allowing the  
3059 determination of all implementation-required profile elements in the context of the profile implementation  
3060 of one or more referenced profiles. Particularly in this example, each fan equipped with a fan speed  
3061 sensor needs to be represented by a Fan instance that is based on the SensoredElement adaptation of  
3062 the Example Sensors profile.

## 3063 7.16 Requirements for the definition of use cases

### 3064 7.16.1 General

3065 Profiles should define use cases that demonstrate the use of the interface defined by the profile. The  
3066 purpose of use cases is to illustrate the steps required to perform a management task by means of the  
3067 interface defined by the profile, and the effects on managed objects in a managed environment and their  
3068 CIM representation in the course of performing that task.

3069 A use case is a named profile element; the rules defined in 7.2.2 apply.

3070 A use case defines the interaction of an external client and an implementation in the execution of steps  
3071 required to be performed in the realization of functionality defined in the profile. Clients may be programs  
3072 such as CIM clients or other external entities such as a person using a switch attached to the system.  
3073 Use cases should represent a complete task from the perspective of the client; this may involve multiple  
3074 CIM operations or methods.

3075 It is emphasized that use cases do not define functionality. Instead, use cases *apply* functionality that is  
3076 defined by the profile. For that reason use cases are not considered as normative elements of a profile,  
3077 but as essential informative parts that detail potential client activities enabled through implementations of  
3078 the profile.

3079 NOTE The definition of use cases given in this subclause calls for a precise formal specification of the invocation  
3080 of methods and operations that are fully specified by the profile and its referenced specifications. This  
3081 definition of use cases is different from that commonly used in software development where a use case  
3082 informally describes a required behavior of a yet to be developed software component.

3083 Use cases should not contain or repeat normative requirements. Normative requirements are defined by  
3084 other parts of the profile such as the definition of adaptations. However, use cases may informally detail  
3085 expected effects in the managed environment and respective changes in the CIM model defined by the  
3086 profile.

3087 Each required operation or method should be applied by at least one use case. A use case may apply  
3088 zero or more methods, and a particular operation or method may be applied by more than one use case.

### 3089 7.16.2 Requirements for the definition of state descriptions

3090 State descriptions may be provided as part of a use case, but may be provided separately and be  
3091 referenced other parts of the profile, particularly use cases.

3092 State descriptions defined outside of a use case are named profile elements that describe the state of an  
3093 instance of (a subset of) the model defined by a profile at a particular point in time.

3094 State descriptions within a use case may be named for the purpose of referencing them within a across  
3095 use cases defined in the same profile.

3096 State descriptions should be stated in terms of adaptation instances, their properties with actual values,  
3097 and by stating which managed object is represented. Only adaptation instances that are involved in the  
3098 processing of referencing use cases need to be described. Likewise, for each stated adaptation instance  
3099 the set of stated property value pairs may be constricted to those relevant in referencing use cases.

3100 Within state descriptions, adaptation instances may be named for the purpose of referencing them. For a  
3101 particular adaptation instance, these names are required to be unique only within the scope of the state  
3102 description; in other words, the use of the same name for an adaptation instance in two unrelated state  
3103 descriptions does not imply the same adaptation instance. References to adaptation instances should  
3104 ensure that the context to their state description is established.

3105 State descriptions may be expressed in the form of DMTF object diagrams; for details, see 8.3.7.



### 3106 7.16.3 Requirements for the definition of preconditions

3107 For each use case the preconditions shall be defined.

3108 Preconditions are state descriptions (see 7.16.2) that describe the *initial* state of an instance of (a subset  
3109 of) the CIM model defined by the profile.

3110 Additional preconditions may be stated in terms of managed objects. In exceptional cases, preconditions  
3111 may be stated exclusively in terms of the managed objects.

3112 Preconditions may refer to the outcome of other use cases, enabling chaining of use cases.

### 3113 7.16.4 Requirements for the definition of flows of activities

3114 Flows of activities should be stated as sequences of steps; however, steps may be skipped or iterated  
3115 depending on the result of other steps.

3116 Each step should be described in terms of methods and operations that are defined by the subject profile  
3117 or by referenced profiles in the form of method requirements.

3118 For each use case step, the following types of provisions should be stated:

- 3119 • the instance on which an operation or method is performed
- 3120 • the name of the operation or method
- 3121 • the names and values of input parameters relevant to the use case
- 3122 • the expected effect on the managed environment
- 3123 • the corresponding changes on the CIM model
- 3124 • the names and values of output parameters relevant to the use case
- 3125 • the expected return values, and the corresponding situations that result in the managed  
3126 environment
- 3127 • the expected exceptions, and the corresponding situations that result in the managed  
3128 environment

3129 Use cases may refer to other use cases, such that the steps defined by the referenced use cases are  
3130 effectively embedded as part of the referencing use case.

### 3131 7.16.5 Requirements for the definition of postconditions

3132 For each use case the postconditions should be defined if the execution of the use case caused changes  
3133 in the CIM model defined by the profile.

3134 Postconditions are state descriptions (see 7.16.2) that describe the *resulting* state of (a subset of) the  
3135 CIM model defined by the profile after the use case was processed. Postconditions shall be separately  
3136 defined for the various possible outcomes of processing the use case, such as success and failures.

3137 Additional postconditions may be stated in terms of managed objects. In exceptional cases,  
3138 postconditions may be stated exclusively in terms of managed objects.

3139 NOTE Note that as described in 6.6.3 the effect of executing a method or operation on a CIM instance first effects  
3140 a change in the managed object in the managed environment that is represented by that CIM instance;  
3141 only after that change is processed, the CIM instances representing aspects of the changed managed  
3142 object will exhibit corresponding changes in terms of changed property values. However, the state of  
3143 managed objects may change fast and frequently; consequently, it is possible that the state of a managed  
3144 object as viewed through a CIM instance obtained by a client in a subsequent step after the execution of a

3145 use case exposes a state that already differs from the state that is expected as the result of the use case  
3146 execution.

## 3147 **7.17 Backward compatibility**

3148 This subclause defines rules for maintaining backward compatibility between versions of profiles.  
3149 Backward compatibility is a characteristic of profiles enabling clients written against a particular minor  
3150 version of a profile to use the functionality specified by that version in the context of a profile  
3151 implementation of a later minor version of the profile, without requiring modifications of the client.

3152 Backward compatibility relates to the set of minor versions of the profile with the same major version  
3153 number. A specific version of a profile shall be backward compatible to its previous minor versions. For  
3154 example, the version 2.4 of a profile shall be backward compatible to versions 2.0, 2.1, 2.2, and 2.3. A  
3155 new minor version may extend the functionality of previous versions.

3156 A change that breaks backward compatibility is termed incompatibility.

3157 Incompatibilities may be introduced in new major versions.

3158 Incompatibilities shall not be introduced in new minor versions or in new update versions, except for error  
3159 corrections. If incompatibilities are introduced in new minor versions or in new update versions as part of  
3160 error corrections, each incompatibility shall be described from a client perspective, and shall state both  
3161 the version it breaks, and the version introducing the incompatibility.

## 3162 **7.18 Definition of experimental content**

3163 A profile may designate definitions as experimental. In this case the rules about experimental content as  
3164 defined in the "Document conventions" of this guide for experimental material shall be applied.

3165 A profile that uses experimental schema elements shall designate the definitions that use the  
3166 experimental schema elements as experimental.

## 3167 **7.19 Deprecation of profile content**

3168 A new minor or update version of a profile may deprecate the definition of profile elements or other profile  
3169 definitions. All deprecated profile definitions shall be continuously documented in new minor or update  
3170 versions of a profile.

3171 For deprecated profile definitions the rules about deprecated content as defined in the "Document  
3172 conventions" of this guide for deprecated material shall be applied.

3173 Deprecated profile definitions may be removed in new major versions of the profile.

3174 Profiles should not use deprecated profile content (from other profiles) or deprecated schema elements.  
3175 However, minor revisions of profiles that use schema elements that are deprecated in a newer version of  
3176 the schema are not obliged to be upgraded to the new schema version just for the purpose of changing to  
3177 the replacement of the deprecated element.

# 3178 **8 Profile general conventions and guidelines**

## 3179 **8.1 General**

3180 Clause 8 defines general conventions and guidelines that apply for all kinds of profiles, including those  
3181 specified in form of profile specifications (as detailed in clause 9), or in the form of machine readable  
3182 profiles. In any case with respect to the profile content the requirements detailed in clause 7 apply.

3183 **8.2 Linguistic and notational conventions**

3184 This subclause defines linguistic and notational conventions for textual definitions in profiles.

3185 All words should be in lower case unless one of the following conditions is met:

- 3186 • The word starts a new sentence, heading, or list item.
- 3187 • The word is a proper noun, such as Ethernet.
- 3188 • The word is an acronym, such as CPU.
- 3189 • The words are part of a profile name (see 7.6.2), such as Profile Registration.
- 3190 • The word is a schema element, such as CIM\_SystemDevice.

3191 Phrases should not be concatenated into one word unless one of the following conditions is met:

- 3192 • The word is the name of a named profile element (see 7.2.2), such as FanStateManagement or  
3193 FanCapabilities.
- 3194 • The word is a schema element, such as CIM\_SystemDevice, EnabledState, or  
3195 RequestStateChange( ).
- 3196 • The word is an object name, such as MAINCPUFAN.

3197 Elements of the managed environment and elements of the CIM model defined by the profile should be  
3198 clearly distinguished. The following rule set is established in order to avoid wrong, unclear, or confusing  
3199 text that typically results from mixing elements from the managed environment and elements from the  
3200 CIM model defined by a profile.

3201 The following rules should be adhered to:

- 3202 • CIM class names or adaptation names should not be used to refer to the object types defined in  
3203 the management domain, and vice versa.
- 3204 • CIM class names or adaptation names should not be used to refer to the managed objects in  
3205 the managed environment (that are represented by their instances), and vice versa.
- 3206 • References to instances of CIM classes or adaptations should contain the word "instance"  
3207 unless the instance is clearly identified by an instance name.
- 3208 • The managed object represented by an instance should be clearly identified, either immediately  
3209 such as in "The VirtualSystem instance VSYS4 representing virtual system 4", or indirectly by a  
3210 previously established context.
- 3211 • The value of a property should be distinguished from the property itself.
- 3212 • Object names should be all uppercase, such as in MAINCPUFAN.

3213 For example, assume the specification of an Example Fan profile that defines a Fan adaptation of the  
3214 CIM\_Fan class. The Fan adaptation models fans that provide cooling for managed elements within  
3215 systems. Furthermore, assume an example situation where a Fan instance named MAINCPUFAN  
3216 represents the fan of the main CPU within an example system.

3217 Table 2 juxtaposes examples of recommended phrasing with examples of phrasing that is wrong or  
3218 confusing.

3219 **Table 2 – Specification recommendations**

| Recommended   | Not recommended (wrong, unclear or confusing)  |
|---|--|
| "The Fan instance MAINCPUFAN represents the CPU fan." | "MAINCPUFAN is the fan of the main CPU."<br>Problem: MAINCPUFAN identifies the Fan instance that |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>NOTE 1 This text defines MAINCPUFAN, such that it can be used in subsequent text. Typically definitions like this refer to a DMTF object diagram showing the identified instance.</p> <p>NOTE 2 Fan identifies the Fan adaptation, MAINCPUFAN identifies a particular instance, and CPU fan identifies a managed object. Names of named profile elements (such as adaptations) are capitalized (see 7.2.2), object names should be all uppercase, and all other words are not capitalized unless required by normal English language.</p> | <p><i>represents</i> the main CPU fan. Thus MAINCPUFAN is a CIM representation of the fan, but it <i>is not</i> the fan itself.</p>  |
| <p>Preferred:<br/>"The value of the EnabledState property in MAINCPUFAN is 2 (Enabled)."</p> <p>Alternative:<br/>"The EnabledState value in MAINCPUFAN is 2 (Enabled)."</p>  | <p>"MAINCPUFAN is Enabled."<br/>Problem: CIM instances are not "Enabled"; instead, CIM instances exhibit property values that reflect the state of the represented object in the managed environment.</p> <p>"The state of the main CPU fan is 2 (Enabled)."<br/>Problem: The state of the managed object (the CPU fan) is being confused with the state as viewed through the CIM instance representing the managed object. If the CPU fan is enabled, that is reflected in the Fan instance MAINCPUFAN through the value 2 (Enabled) for the EnabledState property.</p> <p>"The fan state is Enabled."<br/>Problem: The state of the managed object is being confused with the textual representation of a property value in the instance representing the managed object.</p> <p>"EnabledState shall match 2."<br/>Problem: The property name and the property value are not distinguished.</p> |

3220 **8.3 Conventions and guidelines for diagrams**

3221 **8.3.1 General**

3222 Five types of diagrams are commonly used in profiles:

- 3223 • **EXPERIMENTAL: DMTF collaboration structure diagrams** (see 8.3.4) show the structure of a  
3224 profile or subset thereof, and the collaborations that this structure makes possible.
- 3225 • **EXPERIMENTAL: DMTF adaptation diagrams** (see 8.3.5) show the adaptations defined by a  
3226 profile or subset thereof, and possibly adaptations defined in referenced profiles.
- 3227 • **DMTF class diagrams** (see 8.3.6) show the classes adapted by a profile (and possibly classes  
3228 adapted by referenced profiles).
- 3229 • **DEPRECATED: DMTF profile class diagrams** (see 10.3.3.2) show "profile classes" (see  
3230 deprecation notice in 7.13.1). DMTF profile class diagrams are only admissible in revisions of  
3231 existing profile specifications that maintain the traditional profile specification structure (see  
3232 10.3.3).
- 3233 • **DMTF object diagrams** (see 8.3.7, also referred to as instance diagrams) show a set of related  
3234 objects (or, more precisely, adaptation instances) at a point in time. Object diagrams may be  
3235 associated with use cases, by showing how the use case affects properties and object  
3236 relationships.
- 3237 • **DMTF sequence diagrams** (see 8.3.8) show the interaction between adaptation instances in  
3238 terms of methods and operations.

3239 **8.3.2 General diagram guidelines**

3240 Diagrams are not normative; all normative information shall be provided in text.

3241 Fonts in diagrams should not be less than 10 points, and shall not be less than 6 points.

3242 For DMTF diagrams the notational conventions as established by the [OMG UML Superstructure](#) apply.

3243 **8.3.3 Diagram color conventions**

3244 The color conventions as defined in this subclause should be applied for DMTF adaptation diagrams  
 3245 (see 8.3.5), DMTF class diagrams (see 8.3.6), DMTF profile class diagrams (DEPRECATED, see  
 3246 10.3.3.2), and DMTF object diagrams (see 8.3.7). Deviations from the color conventions are permitted,  
 3247 but they shall be documented and consistently applied.

3248 The conventions defined in this subclause are an adapted subset of the conventions outlined in diagrams  
 3249 that depict schema definitions owned by DMTF.

3250 The following color conventions apply:

- 3251 • Associations – red line



3252

- 3253 • Aggregation association – green line with a hollow diamond at the aggregating end



3254

- 3255 • Composition association – green line with a solid diamond at the aggregating end



3256

- 3257 • Inheritance relationships – blue line with hollow arrow at the superclass end



3258

3259 In DMTF adaptation diagrams this symbol may also be used to represent the "based on"  
 3260 relationship between adaptations. In DMTF object diagrams, inheritance relationships shall not  
 3261 be shown.

3262 **DEPRECATED**

- 3263 • Composition association – green line with a hollow diamond and a dot at the aggregating end



3264

3265 NOTE In [OMG UML Superstructure](#) a dot at the endpoint indicates that the endpoint is owned by the  
 3266 connected element. However, with CIM associations, an association endpoint is owned by the  
 3267 association itself; consequently, the former convention of showing a dot is incorrect, and is  
 3268 replaced by the conventions for aggregation and composition associations not showing the dot.

- 3269 • Inheritance relationships – blue line with solid arrow at the superclass end



3270

3271 NOTE In [OMG UML Superstructure](#) a closed arrow at an endpoint of a UML graphic path is defined to  
 3272 indicate an UML extension, whereas a hollow arrow is defined to indicate a UML generalization.

3273 Because CIM inheritance is logically equivalent to the UML concept of generalizations — and  
 3274 not to that of UML extensions — a hollow arrow is required at the end connecting to the  
 3275 generalized element, whereas the former use of a solid arrow is incorrect.  
 3276 A UML extension indicates that the properties of a metaclass are extended through a  
 3277 stereotype to flexibly add (and later remove) stereotypes to classes. A UML generalization is a  
 3278 taxonomic relationship between a more general classifier and a more specific classifier where  
 3279 each instance of the specific classifier is also an indirect instance of the general classifier, and  
 3280 the specific classifier inherits the features of the more general classifier.

## 3281 DEPRECATED

---

3282

## 3283 EXPERIMENTAL

---

### 3284 8.3.4 DMTF collaboration structure diagram guidelines

3285 DMTF collaboration structure diagrams show the structure of a complete profile, or a logically related  
 3286 subset of profile elements (such as features), and all or a part of the collaboration defined by the profile.

3287 DMTF collaboration structure diagrams are a specialization of UML composite structure diagrams; for the  
 3288 normative definition of UML composite structure diagrams, see [OMG UML Superstructure](#).

3289 For DMTF collaboration structure diagrams the following additional rules and conventions apply:

3290 • A CSD shall depict either the complete collaboration defined by a profile, or a subset of that  
 3291 collaboration.

3292 • A CSD shall be labeled as follows:

```
3293 CSDLabel = RegisteredProfileName [ WS "-" WS SubpartName WS
3294 SubpartType ]
```

3295 *RegisteredProfileName* shall be the registered name of the profile. *SubpartName* shall  
 3296 only be used if the CSD shows a subcollaboration of the profile; in this case, the *SubpartType*  
 3297 may identify the type of the subpart, such as a feature, pattern, or scenario.

3298 • Adaptations of ordinary classes or indication classes shall be represented as UML parts.

3299 It is not required that all adaptations defined by a profile are shown; instead, the selection of  
 3300 adaptations for display in one or more CSD diagrams is left to the profile author. Also, multiple  
 3301 CSD diagrams may be shown, each reflecting a sub-collaboration defined in the profile.

3302 Each UML part shall be shown as a solid rectangle (box), and shall be named as follows:

```
3303 PartName = AdaptationName *WSP ":" *WSP ClassName [ *WSP "[" [ *WSP
3304 ] PartMultiplicity [ *WSP ] "]" ]
```

3305 *AdaptationName* shall be the name of the ordinary class or indication adaptation, *ClassName*  
 3306 shall be the name of the adapted ordinary or indication class, and *PartMultiplicity* shall  
 3307 be the multiplicity of the part.

3308 UML part multiplicities shall correspond to the number of instances required by an adaptation.  
 3309 UML part multiplicities shall be shown if deviating from the default "\*" (zero to many).

3310 • Adaptations of associations shall be represented by UML connectors. Each UML connector  
 3311 shall be shown as a solid line, connecting two UML parts. Each UML connector shall be named  
 3312 as follows:

3313           ConnectorName = AssociationAdaptationName \*WSP ":" \*WSP  
3314           AssociationClassName

3315           AssociationAdaptationName shall be the name of the association adaptation, and  
3316           AssociationClassName shall be the name of the adapted association class.

3317           – If represented in a CSD, references defined by association adaptations shall be  
3318           represented as UML endpoint names. UML endpoint names shall be shown as text at the  
3319           ends of a UML connector.

3320           – If represented in a CSD, reference multiplicities shall be represented by UML endpoint  
3321           multiplicities. The representation of reference multiplicities is required if deviating from the  
3322           default multiplicity "\*" (zero to many).

3323           • The use of a profile may be represented as UML collaboration use. UML collaboration uses  
3324           shall be shown as dashed ovals. Each UML collaboration use shall be named as follows:

3325           CollaborationUseName = [ ProfileReferenceName ] \*WSP ":" \*WSP  
3326           ProfileName

3327           ProfileReferenceName shall be the name of the profile reference as defined by the  
3328           referencing subject profile.

3329           ProfileName shall be the name of the referenced profile or the name of the subject profile in  
3330           the case where the subject profile defines adaptations based on other adaptations in the same  
3331           profile. If in the latter case a ProfileReferenceName is specified, the UML collaboration use  
3332           represents a complete new use of the subject profile by itself; otherwise, the UML collaboration  
3333           use serves only as an anchor point for base adaptations.

3334           • If represented in a CSD, the relationship between an adaptation of an ordinary class defined in  
3335           the subject profile and profiles defining base adaptations of that adaptation shall be shown as  
3336           UML role bindings.

3337           A UML role binding shall be shown as a dashed line connecting a UML collaboration use  
3338           representing the profile that defines a base adaptation, and the UML part representing a class  
3339           adaptation defined in the subject profile. A UML role binding shall be labeled close to the class  
3340           adaptation end, as follows:

3341           EndRoleName = BaseAdaptationName

3342           BaseAdaptationName shall be the name of the base adaptation.

3343           For a particular adaptation it is not required that any relationships to profiles defining base  
3344           adaptations is shown through UML role bindings; the selection is left to the profile author.

3345           • As an alternative to the use of UML collaboration uses and UML role bindings, the inheritance  
3346           arrow may be used to show the relationship between an adaptation and its base adaptation(s).

3347           Figure 8 shows examples of three DMTF collaboration structure diagrams depicting collaborations  
3348           defined by one autonomous profile and two component profiles.

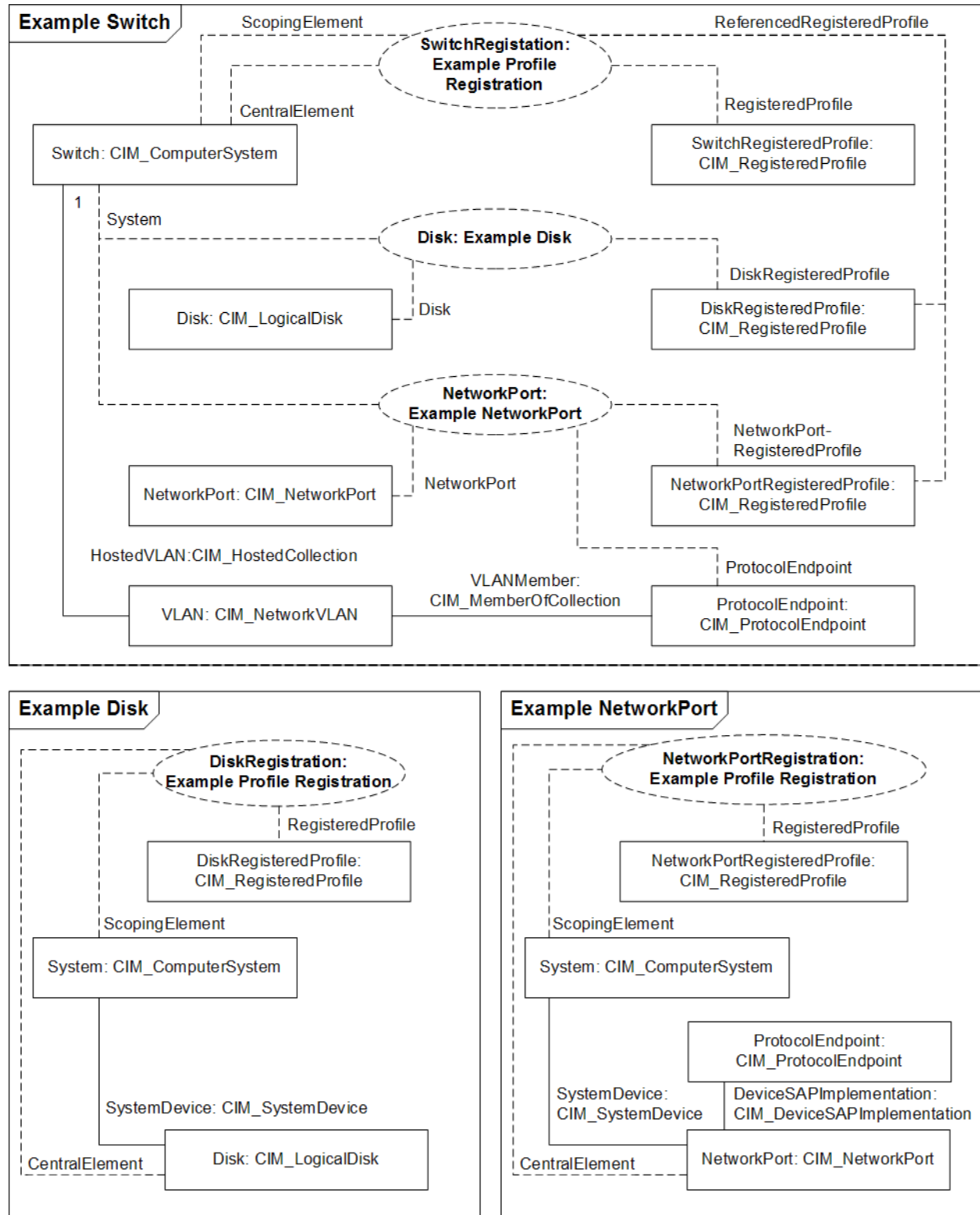


Figure 9 – Example of a DMTF collaboration structure diagram

3349  
3350



- 3351 The upper part of Figure 9 shows the collaboration defined by an autonomous Example Switch profile.  
3352 The Example Switch profile models a switch with switch ports and with a disk that contains configuration  
3353 data. The collaboration defined by the autonomous Example Switch profile is depicted as follows:
- 3354 • The Example Switch profile defines a Switch adaptation of the CIM\_ComputerSystem class.  
3355 This is depicted by the UML part (solid rectangle) named "Switch: CIM\_ComputerSystem".
  - 3356 • The Example Profile Registration profile is referenced by the Example Switch profile. This is  
3357 depicted by the UML collaboration use (dashed oval) named "SwitchRegistration:  
3358 Example Profile Registration".
  - 3359 • The System adaptation is based on the CentralElement adaptation of the Example Profile  
3360 Registration profile. This is depicted by the UML role binding (dashed line) named  
3361 CentralElement that connects the UML part named "Switch: CIM\_ComputerSystem" with  
3362 the UML collaboration named "SwitchRegistration: Example Profile  
3363 Registration".
  - 3364 • The Example Switch profile references the Example Disk profile and the Example Network Port  
3365 profile. This is shown by the UML collaboration uses (dashed ovals) named "Disk: Example  
3366 Disk" and "NetworkPort: Example NetworkPort".
  - 3367 • The Example Profile Registration profile requires profiles to express profile dependencies by  
3368 means of the CIM\_ReferencedProfile association. For example, for the Example Disk profile this  
3369 is depicted by the UML role binding named ReferencedRegisteredProfile connecting the  
3370 UML collaboration named "SwitchRegistration: Example Profile Registration"  
3371 with the UML part (solid rectangle) named "DiskRegisteredProfile: CIM\_Register-  
3372 edProfile". The latter corresponds to the DiskRegisteredProfile adaptation of the Example  
3373 Disk profile, as depicted by the UML role binding named DiskRegisteredProfile  
3374 connecting it with the UML collaboration use named "Disk: Example Disk".
  - 3375 • The Example Switch profile defines a VLAN adaptation of the CIM\_NetworkVLAN class. This is  
3376 depicted by the UML part named "VLAN: CIM\_NetworkVLAN".
  - 3377 • The Example Switch profile defines a HostedVLAN adaptation of the CIM\_HostedCollection  
3378 association for the representation of the relationship between a switch and the VLANs hosted  
3379 by that switch. This is depicted by the UML connector (solid line) named "HostedVLAN:  
3380 CIM\_HostedCollection".
  - 3381 • Note that the UML endpoint multiplicity at the Switch side is 1, indicating that the VLAN  
3382 adaptation relates to the VLAN endpoints of exactly one switch. If the VLAN ranges over several  
3383 switches, the VLAN elements hosted by the other switches would have to be provided by  
3384 separate VLAN instances. This behavior is also implied by the definition of the  
3385 CIM\_NetworkVLAN class.
  - 3386 • Note that the implied UML part multiplicity of the "Switch: CIM\_ComputerSystem" UML part  
3387 is "\*", indicating that an implementation of the Example Switch profile controls zero or more  
3388 switches.

3389 **EXPERIMENTAL**

---

3390 **EXPERIMENTAL**3391 **8.3.5 DMTF adaptation diagram guidelines**

3392 DMTF adaptation diagrams are UML class diagrams (see [OMG UML Superstructure](#)) that conform to  
3393 additional requirements defined in this subclause.

3394 The diagram color conventions defined in 8.3.3 apply.

3395 For DMTF adaptation diagrams the following additional rules and conventions apply:

3396 • DMTF adaptation diagrams shall show class adaptations (adaptations of ordinary classes,  
3397 association classes, and indication classes).

3398 • A DMTF adaptation diagram shall be labeled as follows:

3399 `DADLabel = RegisteredProfileName [ WS " - " WS SubsetName ]`

3400 `RegisteredProfileName` shall be the registered name of the profile. `SubsetName` may be  
3401 used if the DMTF adaptation diagram shows a subset of adaptations defined by the profile; in  
3402 this case, `SubsetName` should paraphrase the purpose of the shown subset of adaptations.

3403 • If represented in a DMTF adaptation diagram, adaptations of ordinary classes or indication  
3404 classes shall be represented as UML classes where the UML class name shall be the  
3405 adaptation name. The following format shall be applied:

3406 `BoxLabel = AdaptationName`  
3407 `[ "(" *WSP "from" WS RegisteredProfileName *WSP ")" ]`  
3408 `[ "{" *WSP "adapts" WS ClassName *WSP "}" ]`

3409 `AdaptationName` shall be the name of the adaptation. If the adaptation is defined in a profile  
3410 other than the subject profile, the "from" part shall be used and the referencing profile's  
3411 registered profile name shall be stated as `RegisteredProfileName`. Unless the name of the  
3412 adapted class is identical to the adaptation name prefixed with `CIM_`, the "adapts" part should  
3413 be used and `ClassName` shall be the name of the adapted class.

3414 • If represented in a DMTF adaptation diagram, adaptations of associations shall be represented  
3415 as UML associations, or more specifically as UML aggregations or UML compositions if  
3416 respective semantics apply from the schema definition of the adapted association. The UML  
3417 association name shall be the name of the association adaptation. The following format shall be  
3418 applied:

3419 `AssociationLabel = AssociationAdaptationName`  
3420 `[ "(" *WSP "from" WS RegisteredProfileName *WSP ")" ]`  
3421 `[ "{" *WSP "adapts" WS AssociationClassName *WSP "}" ]`

3422 `AssociationAdaptationName` shall be the name of the association adaptation. If the  
3423 association adaptation is defined in a profile other than the subject profile, the "from" part shall  
3424 be used and the referencing profile's registered profile name shall be stated as  
3425 `RegisteredProfileName`. Unless the name of the adapted association class is identical to  
3426 the adaptation name prefixed with `CIM_`, the "adapts" part should be used and  
3427 `AssociationClassName` shall be the name of the adapted association class.

3428 – Reference properties required by association adaptations may be represented as UML  
3429 association ends. If used, UML association ends may be shown as text at the ends of the  
3430 UML association representing the association adaptation.

- 3431 – Reference multiplicities shall be represented as UML association end multiplicities if
- 3432 deviating from the default "\*" (zero to many). The default multiplicity "\*" may be
- 3433 represented by UML association end multiplicities.
- 3434 • In general, any adaptation defined by a profile should be depicted at most once in a DMTF
- 3435 adaptation diagram. The desire for depicting a particular adaptation more than once should be
- 3436 taken as an indicator that the definition of a separate adaptation is appropriate.
- 3437 • DMTF adaptation diagrams should not show properties and methods.

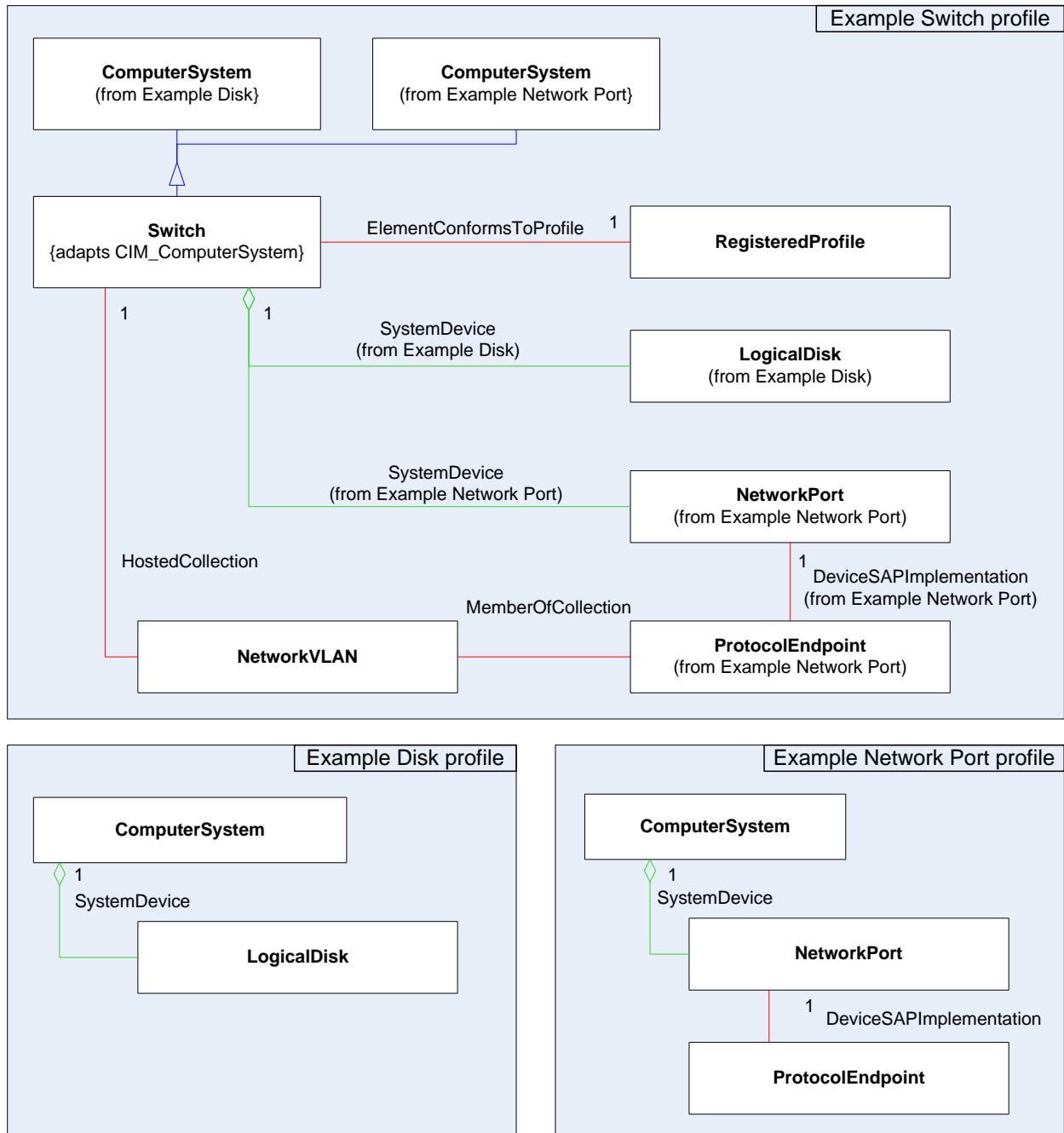


Figure 10 – Examples of DMTF adaptation diagrams

3438  
3439

3440 Figure 10 shows examples of DMTF adaptation diagrams from one autonomous profile and two  
3441 component profiles.

3442 NOTE The shaded rectangles are not part of the conventions for DMTF adaptation diagrams as defined in 8.3.5;  
3443 they are shown here such that multiple DMTF adaptation diagrams can be condensed into one diagram.

3444 The upper part of Figure 10 shows the DMTF adaptation diagram of an autonomous Example Switch  
3445 profile. It is assumed that the central class adaptation of the Example Switch profile is the Switch  
3446 adaptation that adapts the CIM\_ComputerSystem class, and is based on both the ComputerSystem  
3447 adaptations defined in the Example Disk profile and in the Example Network Port profile.

## 3448 **EXPERIMENTAL**

---

### 3449 **8.3.6 DMTF class diagram guidelines**

3450 DMTF class diagrams are UML class diagrams (see [OMG UML Superstructure](#)) that conform to additional  
3451 requirements defined in this subclause.

3452 The diagram color conventions defined in 8.3.3 apply.

3453 DMTF class diagrams shall show adapted ordinary classes, adapted association classes and adapted  
3454 indication classes.

3455 NOTE A particular class may be shown multiple times in a class diagram; this is in conformance with the rules for  
3456 UML diagrams specified in [OMG UML Superstructure](#).

3457 DMTF class diagrams shall not mix the conventions of class and object diagrams.

3458 DMTF class diagrams may show properties and methods; if so, only properties and methods referenced  
3459 by the subject profile should be shown.

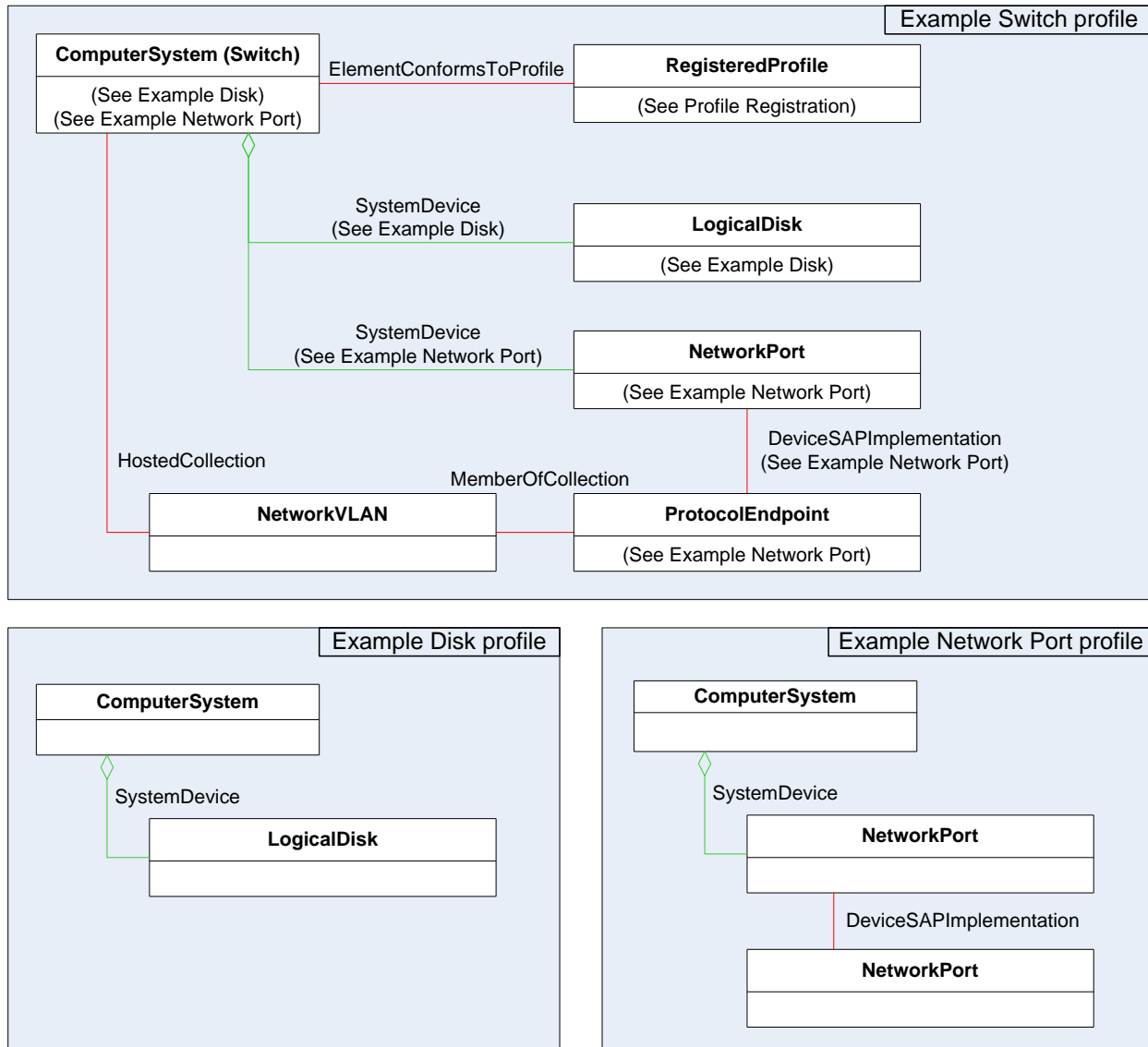


Figure 11 – Examples of DMTF class diagrams

3460  
 3461  
 3462 Figure 11 shows examples of class diagrams from one autonomous profile and two component profiles.

3463 NOTE The shaded rectangles are not part of the conventions for DMTF class diagrams as defined in 8.3.6; they  
 3464 are shown here such that multiple DMTF class diagrams can be condensed into one diagram.

3465 The upper part of Figure 11 shows the class diagram of an autonomous Example Switch profile. It is  
 3466 assumed that the central class adaptation of the Example Switch profile is the Switch adaptation that is  
 3467 based on the CIM\_ComputerSystem class, and in addition is based on both the ComputerSystem  
 3468 adaptations defined in the Example Disk profile and in the Example Network Port profile.

3469 **8.3.7 DMTF object diagram guidelines**

3470 DMTF object diagrams (also referred to as instance diagrams) are UML object diagrams (see [OMG UML](#)  
 3471 [Superstructure](#)) that satisfy the additional constraints defined in this subclause.

3472 DMTF object diagrams shall show a set of related adaptation instances at a point in time. DMTF object  
 3473 diagrams may be associated with use cases — showing how adaptation instances, particularly their

3474 property values and their relationships, are visible to clients in the process of performing a sequence of  
3475 activities as described by a use case.

3476 DMTF object diagrams depict example instantiations and should illustrate best practice implementations.

3477 The labels of any CIM instances in a DMTF object diagram shall be specified using the format (in ABNF):

```
3478 InstanceLabel = [ InstanceName *WSP ] "/" *WSP AdaptationName /
3479 ":" *WSP ClassName /
3480 "/" *WSP AdaptationName ":" *WSP ClassName
3481 InstanceName = *["A"-"Z"] / ("0"-"9") / "_" ]
```

3482 The `AdaptationName` ABNF rule shall evaluate to the name of a class adaptation defined in the subject  
3483 profile or a referenced profile. The value of the `InstanceName` ABNF rule is an arbitrary uppercase  
3484 string that may be used to refer to the instance from any text describing the diagram; it may be omitted if  
3485 the resulting label is not ambiguous within the diagram. `ClassName` may be used in addition to  
3486 `AdaptationName`; it may also be used instead of the `ClassName` when presenting the use of a class for  
3487 which an adaptation is not required by the subject profile.

3488 Examples:

```
3489 SYSTEM1 / System ; InstanceName/AdaptationName
3490 SYS_2: CIM_ComputerSystem ; InstanceName:ClassName
3491 CLUSTER/Cluster: CIM_AdminDomain ; all three components
3492 /VirtualSystem ; /AdaptationName
3493 : CIM_ComputerSystem ; :ClassName
```

3494 Instances of abstract classes shall not be shown in DMTF object diagrams. If a variety of concrete  
3495 subclasses are applicable in a particular case, a concrete subclass shall be selected and explanatory text  
3496 be provided with the diagram stating that the other concrete classes are applicable as well.

3497 Instances shall be represented with a box that exhibits the two horizontal compartments. The top  
3498 compartment shall contain the instance label as defined for the `InstanceLabel` ABNF rule. The bottom  
3499 compartment may contain applicable properties that are needed to be illustrative, including properties that  
3500 are defined in the schema definition of adapted classes but are not referenced by the subject profile or a  
3501 referenced profile.

3502 For each applicable property, the property name and its value shall be listed using the format (in ABNF):

```
3503 PropertyEntry = PropertyName *WSP PropertyAssignment *WSP PropertyValue
3504 PropertyName = IDENTIFIER
3505 PropertyValue = initializer
3506 PropertyAssignment = "="
```

---

### 3507 DEPRECATED

3508 Minor revisions of profiles initially specified in compliance with version 1.0 of this guide may continue  
3509 using the colon as the assignment operator in property entries.

```
3510 PropertyAssignment = "=" / ":"
```

### 3511 DEPRECATED

---

3512 Methods should not be shown in DMTF object diagrams.

- 3513 If UFiT values are included in the object diagram, they should conform to [DSP0215](#).
- 3514 DMTF object diagrams shall be accompanied by descriptive text that explains the diagram and its  
3515 pertinence.
- 3516 Associations shall be depicted as UML links. Associations with properties other than reference properties  
3517 may be depicted as a separate UML object that contains the properties and is connected to the  
3518 association link with a dashed line.

---

3519 **DEPRECATED**

- 3520 Minor revisions of profiles specified in compliance with version 1.0 of this guide may continue depicting  
3521 association properties as a list below the association class name.

3522 **DEPRECATED**

---

3523 **8.3.8 DMTF sequence diagram guidelines**

- 3524 DMTF sequence diagrams are UML sequence diagrams (see [OMG UML Superstructure](#)) that satisfy the  
3525 additional constraints defined in this subclause.

- 3526 DMTF sequence diagrams shall depict the interaction between CIM instances, in the form of method or  
3527 operation calls and call returns.

- 3528 Lifelines in DMTF sequence diagrams shall be labeled using the same format as that defined for labeling  
3529 objects in DMTF object diagrams, as defined by the `InstanceLabel` rule in 8.3.7.

3530 **8.3.9 Designation of deprecated or experimental elements in diagrams**

- 3531 Profiles may designate profile elements as experimental (see 7.18), and revisions of profiles may  
3532 deprecate profile elements defined in a previous version (see 7.19).

- 3533 Profiles may refer to deprecated or experimental schema elements as part of class adaptations (see  
3534 7.13.2.1), property requirement (see 7.13.2.8), or method requirements (see 7.13.3.2).

- 3535 In diagrams the depiction of respective deprecated or experimental elements, or of elements that depend  
3536 on deprecated or experimental schema elements, should be designated using the following notational  
3537 conventions:

- 3538 • Deprecated element – suffix the letter D in curly brackets:  
3539 {D}
- 3540 • Experimental element – suffix the letter E in curly brackets:  
3541 {E}

3542 **9 Profile implementation requirements**

3543 **9.1 General**

- 3544 Clause 9 defines the requirements for the implementation of one or more profiles. The primary target  
3545 audience for this clause is implementers of profiles.

## 3546 9.2 Implementation requirements for a set of profiles

### 3547 9.2.1 General

3548 Typically, a profile is not implemented by itself but as part of the implementation of a set of profiles that is  
 3549 composed of one or more profiles selected by the implementer for implementation, and their referenced  
 3550 profiles. Such a set of profiles establishes a comprehensive management interface for a management  
 3551 domain that is a composition of the management domains addressed by the individual profiles.

3552 This is also the reason why the term "implementation" (see 3.30) is defined as "a WBEM server that  
 3553 implements applicable portions of one or more profiles", as opposed to profile implementation (see 3.67)  
 3554 that is defined as "a subset of an implementation that realizes the requirements of a particular profile in a  
 3555 particular profile implementation context".

3556 The term *implementation-required* is defined as follows: A profile or profile element is implementation-  
 3557 required if its implementation is required as part of the implementation of one or more profiles, namely

- 3558 • The profile or profile element is mandatory
- 3559 • The profile or profile element is conditional or conditional exclusive, and the either the condition  
 3560 is True, or the profile or profile element was selected to be implemented
- 3561 • The profile or profile element is optional and was selected to be implemented
- 3562 • The implementation type (see 7.13.2.5) is not abstract or embedded.

3563 NOTE The implementation requirements of abstract profiles or profile elements are taken into account by  
 3564 concrete elements that are based on them. Likewise, the implementation requirements of embedded  
 3565 profile elements are taken into account by the elements embedding them.

3566 An implementation (of a set of profiles) shall conform to the implementation requirements of these profiles  
 3567 and their referenced specifications.

3568 For a functioning implementation, the following activities need to be performed:

- 3569 • Determine the *implementation adaptation set* by applying the merge algorithm detailed in 9.4.  
 3570 The implementation adaptation set is composed of *implementation adaptations* (see 9.2.2).
- 3571 • Implement each implementation adaptation in the implementation adaptation set, conforming to  
 3572 the requirements detailed in 9.3.

### 3573 9.2.2 Implementation adaptation

3574 An implementation adaptation is an adaptation that is implementation-required for a particular profile  
 3575 implementation. It merges the requirements of base adaptations and of other requirements sources, such  
 3576 as the schema definition of the adapted class, the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1), or of registry  
 3577 elements, such as alert messages or metric definitions.

3578 An implementation adaptation does not contain requirements for optional elements that were not selected  
 3579 to be implemented. Such requirements are simply not merged into the implementation adaptation during  
 3580 processing of the merge algorithm (see 9.4).

### 3581 9.2.3 Profile implementation context

3582 It is very important to realize that a particular used profile (or, more specifically, the adaptations defined in  
 3583 the used profile) may need to be implemented separately for different references to that profile. The  
 3584 decision whether a used profile is implemented separately should be made by investigating whether the  
 3585 managed objects represented by adaptation instances controlled by respective profile implementations  
 3586 are different; if they are this is an indicator for separate profile implementations.



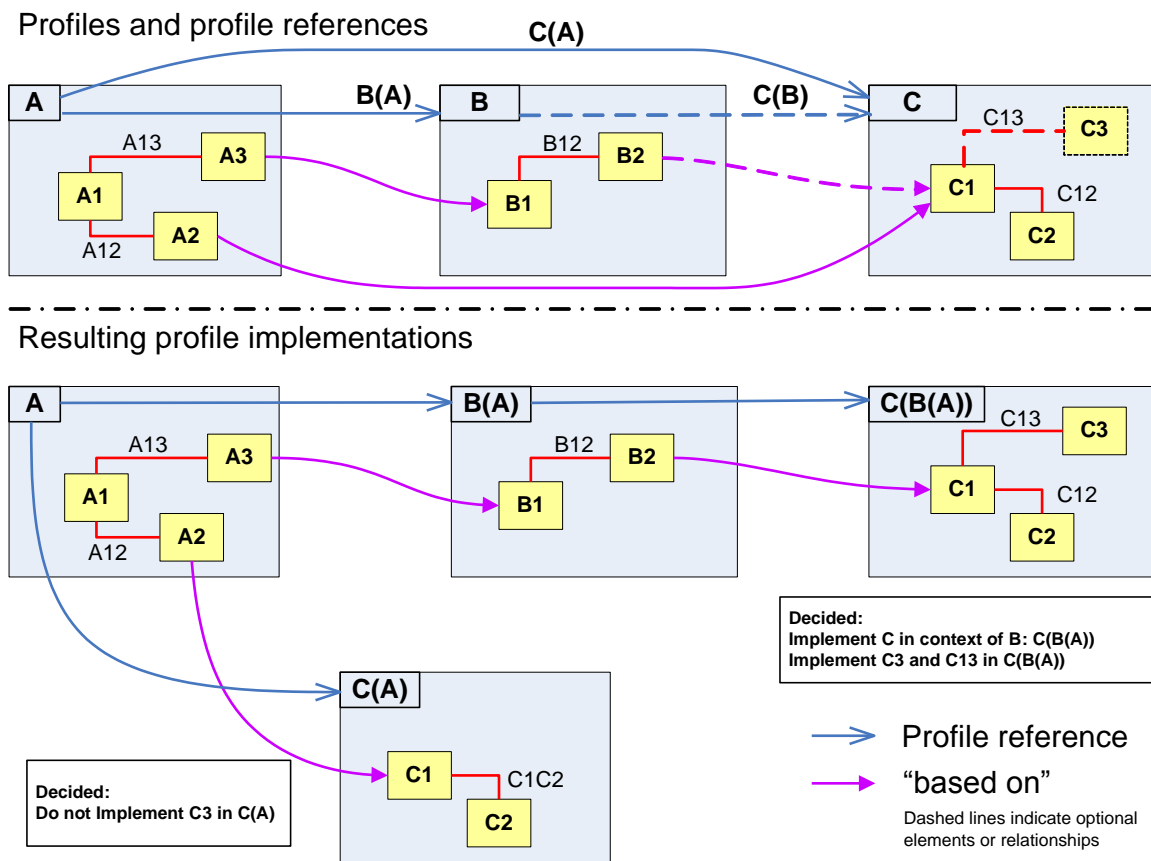
3587 A profile that is not referenced by other profiles is always implemented in its own context. This is typically  
 3588 the case for autonomous profiles.

3589 A profile usage may establish a separate *profile implementation context* with specific implementation  
 3590 requirements for the used profile; this recursively applies to profiles used by the used profile. For a  
 3591 particular profile implementation the profile implementation context is characterized by the chain of profile  
 3592 usages.

3593 The profile implementation context can be written by stating the name of the used profile that is  
 3594 implemented, suffixed by the name of the using profile in parenthesis:

3595 If the context is a chain of profile usages, parenthesis are applied recursively. For example, a profile  
 3596 implementation context of "A" indicates that profile A is implemented in its own profile  
 3597 implementation context, a profile implementation context of "B(A)" indicates that profile B is  
 3598 implemented in context of an implementation of profile A, and "C(B(A))" indicates that profile C is  
 3599 implemented in the context of an implementation of profile B that in turn is implemented in the  
 3600 context of an implementation of profile A.

3601 Figure 12 shows an example of a profile that references two other profiles, and the resulting profile  
 3602 implementations.



3603

3604

**Figure 12 – Example of profiles and resulting profile implementations**

3605 The upper part of Figure 12 shows a set of profiles: Profile A references profile B and profile C as  
 3606 mandatory profiles, and profile B also references profile C as an optional profile.

3607 The lower part of Figure 12 shows the resulting profile implementations in this example case: Profile A is  
 3608 implemented for itself because it is selected for implementation, profile B is implemented in context of

3609 profile A because it is a mandatory profile of profile A. Profile C is implemented twice — in context of  
 3610 profile A and in context of profile B — because it is a mandatory profile of profile A, and because it is an  
 3611 optional profile of profile B, and the decision was made to implement profile C in context of profile B.

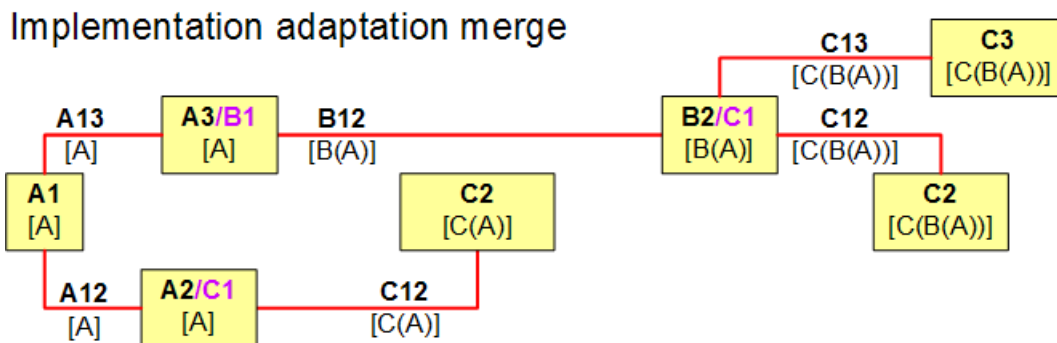
3612 In order to further substantiate the requirement for separate profile implementations, consider that  
 3613 adaptation C1 defined by profile C is the base adaptation for adaptation A3 defined in profile A, as well as  
 3614 for adaptation B2 defined in profile B. A3 as well as B2 introduce additional implementation requirements  
 3615 which in general are different, and can be incompatible with each other. For example, A3 might adapt a  
 3616 subclass of that adapted by C1, and might define property requirements for properties that are defined in  
 3617 that subclass, whereas B2 might define method requirements that are incompatible with those of A3.

3618 In addition, as shown in Figure 12, for each profile implementation different decisions on optional  
 3619 elements are possible. For the implementation of profile C in the context of that of profile A (depicted as  
 3620 C(A)) it was decided not to implement adaptation C3, whereas for the implementation C(B(A)) it was  
 3621 decided to implement adaptation C3.

3622 In order to distinguish implementation adaptations with different profile implementation contexts within the  
 3623 implementation adaptation set they need to be qualified with their profile implementation context, that is,  
 3624 each implementation adaptation is identified by the adaptation name and the profile implementation  
 3625 context.

3626 Furthermore, for each implementation-required profile implementation, the implementation adaptations  
 3627 need to be constructed by merging the requirements from base adaptations.

3628 Figure 13 shows an example of implementation adaptations that were created by merging the  
 3629 requirements from adaptations from the profile implementations shown in Figure 12.



3630

3631

**Figure 13 – Example of merging of adaptations into implementation adaptations**

3632 As shown in Figure 12, adaptation A3 defined in profile A is based on adaptation B1 defined in profile B.  
 3633 Figure 13 shows the result of the merge process: For example, the merge of requirements from both  
 3634 adaptations A3 and B1 in context of the implementation of profile A is shown as the merged  
 3635 implementation adaptation A3/B1[A]. Likewise, because adaptation B2 defined in profile B is based on  
 3636 adaptation C1 defined in profile C, the merge of requirements from adaptations B2 and C1 in context of  
 3637 the implementation of profile B in context of that of profile A is shown as the merged implementation  
 3638 adaptation B2/C1[B(A)].

3639 Note that the profile implementation context is determined for derived adaptations that are implemented,  
 3640 but not for base adaptations that have an impact on those derived adaptations. For instance, in the  
 3641 example shown in Figure 12, profile C does not show up in the profile implementation context [B(A)] of  
 3642 adaptation B2/C1, even though profile C has an impact on that merged adaptation by means of base  
 3643 adaptation C1.

## 3644 9.2.4 Implementation optimizations

3645 During the realization of implementation adaptations optimizations are possible. Any such optimizations  
3646 go beyond the scope of this guide and are mentioned for informational purposes only.

3647 For example, if the implementation requirements do not diverge too much, it might be possible to realize  
3648 two implementation adaptations with one common piece of implementing code that addresses the  
3649 common requirements through a common path, and the small set of different requirements through  
3650 different paths. For the example shown in Figure 13, that might be possible for C2[C(A)] and C2[C(B(A))].

3651 An additional potential for optimization is combining instances. For example, if two or more temperature  
3652 sensors have identical capabilities in all aspects (including identical temperature sensor ranges), then  
3653 these capabilities could be represented by one adaptation instance. Combining instances is an  
3654 optimization that is visible to clients that generally reduces the ability to represent differences and thus  
3655 should be applied with great care.

## 3656 9.2.5 Schema requirements

3657 Implementations shall use the highest version of any schema from the set of schemas required by any of  
3658 the profiles in the set of profiles that are implemented; beyond that, implementations should use the most  
3659 recently published minor version within the same major version of any required schema.

## 3660 9.3 Implementation requirements for implementation adaptations

### 3661 9.3.1 General

3662 The requirements of 9.3 apply for implementation adaptations<sup>2</sup> that are determined for an implementation  
3663 by means of the merge algorithm detailed in 9.4.

3664 In this subclause the implementation requirements for implementation adaptations are listed.

3665 Keep in mind that the quantification "all" for required elements of implementation adaptations only  
3666 comprises implementation-required elements (see 9.2.2). In other words, an implementation adaptation is  
3667 already stripped of optional and conditional elements that were not selected or are not required to be  
3668 implemented. Thus the quantification "all" each time refers to all respective elements of only the  
3669 implementation adaptation, which are the implementation-required elements of the adapted class (and  
3670 other implementation-required elements such as operation requirements, instance requirements and the  
3671 like) that were determined by applying the merge algorithm.

3672 For implementation adaptations with an implementation type of "instantiated", the following requirements  
3673 apply:

- 3674 • implement all properties<sup>2</sup>, as detailed in 9.3.2
- 3675 • implement all methods<sup>2</sup> and operations<sup>2</sup>, as detailed in 9.3.3
- 3676 • implement all instance requirements<sup>2</sup>, as detailed in 9.3.4

3677 For implementation adaptations with an implementation type of "indication", the following requirements  
3678 apply:

- 3679 • implement all properties<sup>2</sup>, as detailed in 9.3.2

---

<sup>2</sup> Note that implementation adaptations are composed only of implementation-required elements; see the general remark in 9.3.1.

- implement all indication-generation requirements<sup>2</sup>, as detailed in 9.3.5

3681 For implementation adaptations with an implementation type of "embedded" or with an implementation  
3682 type of "exception", the following requirements apply:

- implement all properties<sup>2</sup>, as detailed in 9.3.2

### 3684 9.3.2 Implementation requirements for properties

3685 For each implementation adaptation all properties<sup>2</sup> shall be implemented, conforming with all value  
3686 requirements and constraints established by profiles and by the schema. In particular, the profile  
3687 requirements for property values to reflect the situation of the represented (aspect of the) managed object  
3688 shall be implemented.

3689 If a property is required by any of the profiles being implemented (see 9.2.1) with either the mandatory  
3690 requirement level, or with the conditional or conditional exclusive requirement level and the condition  
3691 being True, the property value shall not be Null when retrieved, except if specifically allowed by the profile  
3692 establishing the requirement level. The non-Null value requirement does not apply for implemented  
3693 optional properties.

3694 The values of non-implemented properties shall be Null when retrieved. This is even the case if the  
3695 schema definition of a property defines a non-Null default value because a schema defined default value  
3696 is an initialization constraint that applies at instance creation time only.

### 3697 9.3.3 Implementation requirements for methods and operations

#### 3698 9.3.3.1 General

3699 For each implementation adaptation<sup>2</sup> with an implementation type of "instantiated" an implementation  
3700 shall implement all methods<sup>2</sup>, conforming with the method semantics defined by profiles and by the  
3701 schema.

3702 For each implementation adaptation<sup>2</sup> with an implementation type of "instantiated" an implementation  
3703 shall implement all operations<sup>2</sup>, conforming with the operation semantics defined by profiles and by the  
3704 operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1).

3705 The invocation of non-implemented operations and methods shall fail, indicating that the operation or  
3706 method is not implemented.

#### 3707 9.3.3.2 Input parameters

##### 3708 9.3.3.2.1 Input parameters for methods

3709 An implementation shall implement all input parameters<sup>2</sup>, accepting all input values as required by  
3710 profiles, within the constraints and input value requirements defined by profiles and the schema. This  
3711 applies likewise to property values of embedded CIM instances.

3712 For methods the concept of optional parameters is not defined, values for all parameters are mandatory;  
3713 however, Null is a valid value. Note that profiles may define specific semantics to specific values of input  
3714 parameters; see 7.13.3.2.2.

3715 If for a particular input parameter value requirements are not stated in any profile, the implementation  
3716 may support all or a subset (including the case of not supporting any input value) of the admissible value  
3717 set established by the schema definition of the input parameter, or in case of operations by the definition  
3718 of the operation in the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1).

3719 In case a value subset is supported, and if clients provide input values outside of that value subset, a  
3720 respective error shall be indicated. This applies likewise to values of properties in adaptation instances  
3721 provided as input.

#### 3722 **9.3.3.2 Input parameters for instance creation operations**

3723 For instance creation operations the rules for implementing property values of input instances, for  
3724 initializing property values that are not provided, the operation semantics and error reporting requirements  
3725 are specified in the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1) and in profiles (see 7.13.3.3.3 and  
3726 7.13.2.11.2).

3727 Recall that CIM instances are not created by themselves, but are the representations of (aspects of)  
3728 managed objects; for details, see 6.6. Thus as part of performing an instance creation operation the  
3729 implementation shall create a managed object in (or add a respective existing one to) the managed  
3730 environment such that the CIM instance representing that managed object is identical to the input  
3731 instance with the value determination rules applied.

3732 If the implementation is unable to realize the instance creation in compliance with these rules, then it shall  
3733 fail the instance creation operation and report a respective error.

#### 3734 **9.3.3.2.3 Input parameters for instance modification operations**

3735 For instance modification operations the rules for implementing property values of input instances, for  
3736 selecting properties for that input values are considered or disregarded, the operation semantics and  
3737 error reporting requirements are specified in the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1) and in profiles  
3738 (see 7.13.3.3.4 and 7.13.2.11.3).

3739 Recall that modifiable CIM instances are the representations of (aspects of) managed objects; for details,  
3740 see 6.6. Thus as part of performing an instance modification operation the implementation shall modify  
3741 the represented managed object in the managed environment such that the CIM instance representing  
3742 the modified managed object is identical to the input instance.

3743 If the implementation is unable to realize the instance modification operation in compliance with these  
3744 rules, then it shall fail the instance modification operation and report a respective error.

#### 3745 **9.3.3.3 Output parameters**

3746 An implementation shall implement all output parameters, producing all output values within the  
3747 constraints established by profiles, the schema and the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1), in  
3748 accordance with the situation in the managed environment resulting from the method or operation  
3749 execution. This applies likewise for return values.

3750 For methods the concept of optional parameters is not defined; values for all parameters are mandatory,  
3751 but Null is a legal value. For operations, optional output parameters may be defined in the operations  
3752 specification, in the sense that in some situations no output values are returned.

#### 3753 **9.3.3.4 Error reporting requirements**

3754 If error reporting requirements<sup>2</sup> (see 7.13.3.3.6) are defined for a method or operation, and during the  
3755 method or operation execution an error occurs, the implementation shall apply the error reporting  
3756 requirements that address the error situation.

3757 An error reporting requirement is applied by sending all referenced standard error messages, and by  
3758 returning the CIM status code. The CIM status code is either explicitly required as part of the error  
3759 reporting requirement, or is implicitly required through the value of the CIMSTATUSCODE element of one  
3760 or more of the standard error messages.

3761 If the error situation is addressed by more than one error reporting requirement, the implementation shall  
3762 apply one of those error reporting requirements, as follows:

- 3763 • If a profile defines a relative order among the error reporting requirements, the implementation  
3764 shall apply the error reporting requirements in that order.
- 3765 • If such an order is only established by the error reporting requirements of the operations  
3766 specification (see 7.13.3.3.1), the implementation shall apply the error reporting requirements in  
3767 that order.
- 3768 • If no order is defined, the implementation shall apply the error reporting requirements that most  
3769 appropriately reports the error. The additional description provided along with the error reporting  
3770 requirements may be used as a guideline for selecting for the most appropriate error reporting  
3771 requirements.

### 3772 **9.3.4 Instance requirements**

3773 Implementations of adaptations with an implementation type of "instantiated" shall reflect the situation in  
3774 the managed environment by representing (aspects of) managed objects by adaptation instances, as  
3775 required by instance requirements.

### 3776 **9.3.5 Indication generation requirements**

3777 Implementations of adaptations with an implementation type of "indication" shall reflect the situation in the  
3778 managed environment by complying with all indication-generation requirements (see 7.13.4.2),  
3779 generating respective indications if the event that the indication is designed to report occurs. This applies  
3780 likewise for indications reporting secondary events, such as lifecycle indications reporting changes of the  
3781 CIM model as a result of prior changes in the managed environment. In addition, the requirements of the  
3782 Indications profile (see [DSP1054](#)) apply.

## 3783 **9.4 Merge algorithm**

### 3784 **9.4.1 General**

3785 The purpose of the merge algorithm is determining — for a set of initially selected profile implementations  
3786 and their dependent profile implementations — all required implementation adaptations plus all  
3787 requirements that affect that adaptation implementation, namely

- 3788 • the requirements of the adapted class defined in the schema
- 3789 • the requirements from the adaptation itself, namely element requirements such as property  
3790 requirements, method requirements and operation requirements — both with their error  
3791 reporting requirements, and the instance requirements (or — in case of indications — the  
3792 indication-generation requirements)
- 3793 • the respective requirements from base adaptations
- 3794 • the requirements from the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1)
- 3795 • the requirements from referenced registry elements

3796 The merge algorithm requires the repeated processing of profile implementation checks (see 9.4.3), each  
3797 requiring repeated processing of adaptation implementation checks (see 9.4.4), in order to build the  
3798 implementation adaptation set.

3799 The resulting implementation adaptation set contains — for a set of initially selected profile  
3800 implementations and their dependent profile implementations — all implementation adaptations, each  
3801 with all element requirements collected from the various sources listed above, and with all instance  
3802 requirements or — in case of indication adaptations — indication-generation requirements.

3803 Optimizations are possible when realizing the implementation adaptations from the implementation  
3804 adaptation set; see 9.2.4.

### 3805 9.4.2 Merge algorithm steps

3806 The merge algorithm starts with step 1):

- 3807 1) **Decision:** Select an initial desired set of profiles to be implemented.
- 3808 2) For each profile implementation selected in step 1), perform the profile implementation check as  
3809 detailed in 9.4.3, in its profile implementation context (see 9.2.3).
- 3810 3) Inspect the resulting implementation adaptation set for possible implementation optimizations as  
3811 described in 9.2.4.

3812 After performing step 3), the merge algorithm is completed.

### 3813 9.4.3 Profile implementation check

3814 A profile implementation check is always to be performed in a specific profile implementation context (see  
3815 9.2.3).

- 3816 1) **Decision:** Select which optional and conditional<sup>3</sup> features of the currently checked profile  
3817 implementation are to be implemented; this will impact subsequent steps.
  - 3818 2) For all conditional adaptations check the condition<sup>3</sup>, and if the condition is True, perform the  
3819 adaptation implementation check (see 9.4.4), in the context of the currently checked profile  
3820 implementation.
  - 3821 3) **Decision:** Select which optional and which conditional adaptations (with a condition of False  
3822 from step 2) ) of the currently checked profile implementation are to be implemented. For  
3823 selected adaptations perform the adaptation implementation check (see 9.4.4), in the context of  
3824 the currently checked profile implementation.
  - 3825 4) For base profiles of the currently checked profile implementation, perform the profile  
3826 implementation check (described in this subclause), in the context of the currently checked  
3827 profile implementation. This in effect causes the requirements of the base profile to be  
3828 addressed as if they were requirements of the derived profile.
- 3829 NOTE Step 4) is necessary in order to pick up adaptations defined in the base profile that are not used  
3830 as base adaptations, and thus require an independent implementation.
- 3831 5) For all conditional profiles check the condition<sup>3</sup>, and if the condition is True, perform the profile  
3832 implementation check (described in this subclause) for the implementation of the referenced  
3833 conditional profile, with the profile implementation context extended to the conditional profile.
  - 3834 6) **Decision:** Select which optional profiles and which conditional profiles (with a condition of False  
3835 from step 5) are to be implemented. For selected profile implementations perform the profile  
3836 implementation check (described in this subclause) for the implementation of the referenced  
3837 optional or conditional profiles, with the profile implementation context extended to the selected  
3838 optional or conditional profile.
  - 3839 7) **Decision:** Decide whether for the currently checked profile any scoped profiles are to be  
3840 implemented. For selected profile implementations perform the profile implementation check  
3841 (described in this subclause) for those profile implementations, with the profile implementation  
3842 context extended to the selected scoped profile.

---

<sup>3</sup> The determination of a condition might involve optional elements. If so, at this point it needs to be decided whether these optional element(s) is (are) to be implemented, and that decision needs to be retained in later steps.

#### 3843 9.4.4 Adaptation implementation check

3844 An adaptation implementation check is performed for an adaptation in a specific profile implementation  
3845 context (see 9.2.3). It either creates a new implementation adaptation with that profile implementation  
3846 context in the implementation adaptation set, or amends an existing one, as follows:

- 3847 1) Merge the requirements as exposed by the schema definition of the adapted class. Merging  
3848 means creating the implementation adaptation within the implementation adaptation set if it did  
3849 not yet exist, and adding or refining the element requirements as exposed by the schema  
3850 definition of the adapted class.
  - 3851 2) Merge the mandatory elements to the implementation adaptation (determined or created in step  
3852 1) ). Merging means adding or refining the element requirements with the requirements from the  
3853 adaptation defined in the profile to be implemented.
  - 3854 3) For any conditional elements check the condition. For those conditional elements where the  
3855 condition is True, as in step 2) merge the respective element requirements to the  
3856 implementation adaptation.
  - 3857 4) **Decision:** Select which optional and conditional elements not addressed in step 3) are to be  
3858 implemented, and — as in step 2) — merge the respective element requirements to the  
3859 implementation adaptation.
- 3860 NOTE The potentially complex condition check in step 3) can be avoided for those conditional  
3861 elements that are selected in step 3) anyway, by performing steps 3) and 4) concertedly.
- 3862 5) For any operation, merge the requirements from the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1).
  - 3863 6) If the subject adaptation is based on other adaptations, perform the adaptation implementation  
3864 check (described in this subclause) for the direct base adaptations, using the profile  
3865 implementation context of the profile defining the subject adaptation, and then — in the context  
3866 of the profile defining the base adaptation — mark the implementation of the direct base  
3867 adaptations as addressed by a derived adaptation. The last part is necessary in order to avoid  
3868 picking up those requirements in a later execution of step 4) of the profile implementation check.

#### 3869 9.5 Implementation of deprecated definitions

3870 Implementations shall conform to definitions of the schema, profiles and the operations specification (see  
3871 7.13.3.3.1) regardless of whether or not they are deprecated. Clients should not rely on or exploit  
3872 deprecated definitions, and they are encouraged to stop exploiting deprecated functionality as soon as  
3873 possible.

## 3874 10 Profile specification requirements

### 3875 10.1 General

3876 Clause 10 defines the requirements for profile specifications. Profile specifications are documents  
3877 containing the definition of one or more profiles in textual form.

3878 Clause 10 focuses on formal text document aspects. In addition, all requirements stated in clause 7 for  
3879 profile definitions and the general conventions and guidelines for profile defined in clause 8 apply to  
3880 profile specification documents.

3881 A profile specification published by DMTF shall conform to all requirements of this guide; in addition the  
3882 requirements of [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#) apply. The conformance requirements for profiles and profile  
3883 specifications are detailed in clause 5.



## 3884 10.2 Profile specification conventions

### 3885 10.2.1 Conventions for the specification of requirement levels

3886 In profile specifications, requirement levels (see 7.3) are stated using keywords as defined in this  
3887 subclause.

- 3888 • The mandatory requirement level (see 7.3.2) shall be stated using the keyword "mandatory".
- 3889 • The conditional requirement level (see 7.3.4) shall be stated using the keyword "conditional"; in  
3890 addition, the requirements described in 10.2.3 for the specification of the condition apply.
- 3891 • The conditional exclusive requirement level (see 7.3.5) shall be stated using the keyword  
3892 "conditional exclusive"; in addition, the requirements described in 10.2.3 for the specification of  
3893 the condition apply.
- 3894 • The optional requirement level (see 7.3.3) shall be stated using the keyword "optional".
- 3895 • The prohibited requirement level (see 7.3.6) shall be stated using the keyword "prohibited".

### 3896 10.2.2 Conventions for the specification of implementation types

3897 In profile specifications, the implementation types (defined for adaptations, see 7.13.2.5) are stated using  
3898 keywords as defined in this subclause.

- 3899 • The "instantiated" implementation type shall be stated using the keyword "instantiated".
- 3900 • The "embedded" implementation type shall be stated using the keyword "embedded".
- 3901 • The "abstract" implementation type shall be stated using the keyword "abstract".
- 3902 • The "indication" implementation type shall be stated using the keyword "indication".
- 3903 • The "exception" implementation type shall be stated using the keyword "exception".

### 3904 10.2.3 Conventions for the specification of conditional elements

3905 This subclause defines requirements for the specification of conditional elements in profile specifications.

#### 3906 10.2.3.1 General

3907 Conditions shall be defined using one of the mechanisms defined in 7.4.

#### 3908 10.2.3.2 Conventions for the specification of conditional elements outside of tables

3909 In any text outside of tables the fact that an element is defined as conditional shall be phrased as follows,

```
3910 ConditionalPhrase = "The implementation of the " ElementName " "  
3911 ElementType " is " ConditionalFlavor "."
```

```
3912 ElementName = PROFILE_IDENTIFIER / IDENTIFIER ; shall identify the conditional element
```

```
3913 ElementType = "profile" / "feature" / "adaptation" / "property" / "method"  
3914 / "parameter"
```

```
3915 ConditionalFlavor = "conditional" / "conditional exclusive"
```

3916 In cases where it is not possible to apply this phraseology, alternatively a condition and its consequence  
3917 may be stated as a conditional sentence in the English language.

3918 The text defining the condition shall be phrased in the format of a `ConditionStatement` as detailed  
3919 below:

3920            `ConditionStatement = "Condition:" *WSP ConditionSpecification`

3921 `ConditionSpecification` shall be an appropriate textual representation of the basic types of  
3922 conditions and their combination using Boolean operators, as specified in 7.4.

3923 Examples:

- 3924            • "Condition: The Fan adaptation is implemented".
- 3925            • "Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented."
- 3926            • "Condition: The managed environment contains fans with simple sensors, or the managed  
3927 environment contains fans with numeric sensors."
- 3928            • "Condition: Any of the following:
  - 3929            – The managed environment contains fans with simple sensors.
  - 3930            – The managed environment contains fans with numeric sensors."

### 3931 **10.2.3.3 Conventions for the specification of conditional elements within tables**

3932 Within tables, a conditional element shall be designated with the word "Conditional" (without additional  
3933 text) within the table column indicating the requirement level, as follows:

3934            `ConditionInTable = "Conditional" / "Conditional exclusive"`

3935 The condition shall be specified in a corresponding cell within the Description column of the same table. If  
3936 the text in the Description cell would exceed a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words), it shall be  
3937 replaced by a reference to a separate subclause that defines the condition, following the conventions  
3938 defined in 10.2.3.2.

3939 An example of the specification of a condition within a table is given in Table X-1.

### 3940 **10.2.4 Conventions for the specification of value constraints**

3941 As defined in 7.13.2.10, a profile may constrain property values or method parameter values to a single  
3942 value or a set of values. Also, for string-typed properties, methods and parameters, profiles may specify a  
3943 mechanism that conveys the format used for their values.

3944 In profile specifications, value constraints may be expressed in the form of ABNF, or in the form of a  
3945 regular expression. This subclause details conventions to be applied if regular expressions are used.

3946 Table 3 provides examples of applications of the provisions in this subclause.

3947 If in a profile specification a format specification is stated in the form of a regular expression, it shall be  
3948 preceded by an equivalent format definition stated in the form of normative text. The regular expression-  
3949 based format definition shall follow, encompassed by brackets. Within the brackets the keyword "pattern"  
3950 shall be used to identify the regular expression, followed by the regular expression as a quoted string and  
3951 compliant with the regular expression syntax defined in Annex B. For an example, see  
3952 `PermanentAddress` in Table 3.

3953 NOTE        Regular expressions can be used in code that validates formats. Textual descriptions provide equivalent  
3954 information suitable for human readers.

3955 Within tables, the name of the property or parameter is listed under a separate column, and the value  
3956 constraint shall be expressed within the corresponding cell of the Description column in the form of a  
3957 normative statement, as follows:

- 3958 • If the value set for a string property or parameter is constrained to just one value, that value  
3959 shall be stated and a regular expression pattern should not be specified. For an example, see  
3960 `OtherPortType` in Table 3.
- 3961 • For the specification of the value set of properties or parameters without a `Values` qualifier, a  
3962 requirement for exactly one valid value shall be specified as follows: "Value shall be" or  
3963 "Value shall match", followed by the value. For an example, see `PortNumber` in Table 3.
- 3964 • For the specification of the value set of properties or parameters without a `Values` qualifier, a  
3965 requirement for a list of valid values shall be specified as follows: "Value shall match",  
3966 followed by a list of values separated by vertical bars. For an example, see  
3967 `SupportedMaximumTransmissionUnit` in Table 3.
- 3968 • For the specification of the value set of properties or parameters with a `Values` qualifier, a  
3969 single valid value shall be specified as "Value shall be" or "Value shall match",  
3970 followed by the element from the `ValueMap` value set and followed by the parenthesized  
3971 corresponding (textual) element of the `Values` value set. For an example, see `PortType` in  
3972 Table 3.
- 3973 • For the specification of the value set of a properties or parameters with a `Values` qualifier, a list  
3974 of valid values shall be specified as "Value shall match", followed by a list of elements  
3975 from the `ValueMap` value set separated by vertical bars and followed by a parenthesized list of  
3976 corresponding elements from the `Values` value set separated by "or". For an example, see  
3977 `LinkTechnology` in Table 3.

3978 NOTE The lists of values from the `ValueMap` value set and from the `Values` value set are specified separately.  
3979 This allows the `ValueMap` value list to be a valid regular expression, enabling automatic generation of  
3980 profile specification tables from a separate source (such as XML) that can also be used for testing. If  
3981 elements from the `ValueMap` value set and the `Values` value set were mixed (for example,  
3982 "ProtocolIFType matches 4096 (IP v4) | 4097 (IP v6), | 4098 (both)"), then the  
3983 result is not a valid regular expression.

3984 Outside of tables, value constraints shall be expressed in the form of normative sentences, for example:

3985 "The value of the `BlockSize` property shall convey the formatted block or  
3986 sector size, and shall always be 512."

3987 The examples listed above for the definition of value constraints within tables apply correspondingly, for  
3988 example replacing the phrase "Value shall ..." with the phrase "The value of the xxx  
3989 property shall ...".

3990 Some CIM classes define a separate property for the specification of valid formats of the value of another  
3991 property. The second adaptation example in Table 3 shows a format definition for the `Name` property in a  
3992 `StorageVolume` adaptation of the `CIM_StorageVolume` class with valid formats conveyed through the  
3993 value of the `NameFormat` property.

3994 **Table 3 – Example of string property format definition**

|   |
|---|
| <p><b>X-7 Implementation</b></p> <p>...</p> <p><b>X-7.4 Adaptation: <code>VirtualNetworkPort</code>: <code>CIM_NetworkPort</code></b></p> <p>This subclause defines the adaptation of the <code>CIM_NetworkPort</code> class for the representation of network ports in virtual systems.</p> <p><b>X-7.4.1 Implementation requirements</b></p> <p>Table X-11 lists the implementation requirements for the <code>VirtualNetworkPort</code> adaptation.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Table X-11 – Adaptation: <code>VirtualNetworkPort</code>: <code>CIM_NetworkPort</code></b></p> |
|---|

| Element                          | Requirement | Description  |
|----------------------------------|-------------|--|
| ...                              | ...         | ...  |
| UsageRestriction                 | Mandatory   | Value shall be 2 (Front-end-only)  |
| PortType                         | Mandatory   | Value shall be 1 (Other)   |
| OtherPortType                    | Mandatory   | Value shall be "Dynamic port"  |
| PortNumber                       | Mandatory   | Value shall be 0   |
| LinkTechnology                   | Mandatory   | Value shall match 2   3   5 (Ethernet or IB or FDDI)   |
| PermanentAddress                 | Mandatory   | Value shall be formatted as 16 consecutive uppercase hexadecimal digits (pattern " <code>^[0123456789ABCDEF]{16}\$</code> ") |
| SupportedMaximumTransmissionUnit | Mandatory   | Value shall be 1526   4096   |
| ...                              | ...         | ...  |

...  
**X-7.6 Adaptation: StorageVolume: CIM\_StorageVolume**

**X-7.6.1 Implementation requirements**

Table X-12 lists the implementation requirements for the StorageVolume adaptation.

**Table X-12 – Adaptation: StorageVolume: CIM\_StorageVolume**

| Element    | Requirement | Description                                       |
|------------|-------------|---|
| ...        | ...         | ...   |
| Name       | Mandatory   | See X-7.6.2.                                      |
|            |             |   |
| NameFormat | Mandatory   | Value shall be 7   8   9 (SNVM or NodeWWN or NAA) |
| ...        | ...         | ...   |

...  
**X-7.6.2 Property: Name**

Valid formats of the Name property are constrained by the value of the NameFormat property, as follows:

- If the value of the NameFormat property is 7 (SNVM), the value of the Name property shall convey the vendor name, product name and serial number of the storage volume as three strings separated by "+" characters. The vendor name shall have exactly 8 characters and the product name shall have exactly 16 characters. Both names may contain blanks as significant characters and if necessary shall be padded with blanks to match the required length. The serial number shall be formatted using uppercase hexadecimal digits (pattern "`^[A-Za-z ]{8}\+[A-Za-z ]{16}\+[0123456789ABCDEF]*$`").
- If the value of the NameFormat property is 9 (NAA), the value of the Name property shall convey the system's hardware ID as specified in T10 SPC and shall be formatted as 16 consecutive uppercase hex digits (pattern "`^[0123456789ABCDEF]{16}$`").
- If the value of the NameFormat property is 8 (NodeWWN), the value of the Name property shall convey the system's Fibre Channel WWN and shall be formatted as 8 consecutive uppercase hex digits (pattern "`^[0123456789ABCDEF]{8}$`").

3995 **10.2.4.1 Conventions for the specifications of default property values**

3996 If a profile defines a default value for a property (see 7.13.2.9), that shall be specified using the following  
 3997 format:

3998 `PropertyDefaultValuePhrase = "Default value is " value "."`

#### 3999 **10.2.4.2 Conventions for the specification of reference multiplicities**

4000 The specification of references in association adaptations shall include text specifying the multiplicity of  
4001 the reference if the schema defined multiplicity is further constrained by the profile; see 7.13.2.8.

4002 The format is

4003 `MultiplicitySpecification = "Multiplicity: " MultiplicityValue`

---

#### 4004 **DEPRECATED**

4005 Minor revisions of profiles initially specified in compliance with version 1.0 of this guide may continue  
4006 using the word "cardinality" in place of "multiplicity".

#### 4007 **DEPRECATED**

---

4008 `MultiplicityValue` shall specify the multiplicity, as follows:

4009 `"1"` indicates that exactly one instance is referenced

4010 `"*"` indicates that 0 or more instances are referenced

4011 `"m..n"` indicates that  $m$  to  $n$  instances are referenced, where  $m$  is 0 or a positive integer and  $n$  is  
4012 a positive integer or "\*" (representing unlimited)

4013 If no multiplicity is specified in the profile, the multiplicity defined in the schema definition of the reference  
4014 applies; this may be emphasized by explicitly stating "Reference multiplicity conforms to  
4015 the schema definition".

4016 Note that multiplicities of references are specified in the context of a class adaptation, and that  
4017 multiplicities of references in different adaptations of the same association may be different.

### 4018 **10.3 Profile specification structures**

#### 4019 **10.3.1 General**

4020 This guide defines a choice of two structures for profile specifications: The condensed structure and the  
4021 traditional structure.

4022 The condensed profile specification structure should be favored for new profile specifications that are  
4023 originally created in conformance to this guide.

4024 Revisions of existing profiles may continue to use the traditional structure, and they may apply a mixture  
4025 of both structures with respect to the definition of indications.

4026 **NOTE** The last rule was established to enable revisions of existing profiles to conform with provisions defined by  
4027 this guide with respect to the definition of indication requirements, without requiring these revisions having  
4028 to conform with other provisions of this guide.

#### 4029 **10.3.2 Condensed profile specification structure**

4030 The condensed profile specification structure provides for a comprehensive definition of class adaptations  
4031 as part of the "Implementation" clause; thus, it condenses information into the "Implementation" clause  
4032 that with version 1.0 of this guide was spread over the "CIM elements" clause, the "Methods" clause, and  
4033 the "Implementation" clause.

4034 In the condensed profile specification structure, the location for the table listing all class adaptations  
 4035 defined by a profile is in the "Synopsis" clause. This enables a straight forward definition of class  
 4036 adaptations with a direct entry path through the "Synopsis" clause that provides the overview information  
 4037 and tables with forward references to subclauses of the "Implementation" clause that provide detailed  
 4038 implementation information for each adaptation.

4039 **DEPRECATED**

### 4040 **10.3.3 Traditional profile specification structure**

#### 4041 **10.3.3.1 General**

4042 Minor revisions of profiles initially specified in compliance with version 1.0 of this guide may continue  
 4043 using the traditional profile specification structure as defined in this subclause.

4044 The traditional profile specification structure originally defined in version 1.0 of this guide spreads the  
 4045 entry information to a profile over the "Synopsis" clause and the "CIM Elements" clause. The "CIM  
 4046 Elements" clause typically contains back references to subclauses of the "Implementation" and "Methods"  
 4047 clauses that provide detail information.

4048 With version 1.1 of this guide the traditional structure was established to allow for revisions of existing  
 4049 profile specifications originally created in conformance with version 1.0 of this guide to remain compliant  
 4050 to this guide without structural changes.

4051 Revisions of existing profiles may continue to use the traditional structure, and may apply a mixture of  
 4052 both structures with respect to the definition of indications.

#### 4053 **10.3.3.2 Specific requirements for DMTF class diagrams in traditional profile specifications**

4054 The requirements in this subclause apply in addition to those specified in 8.3.6.

4055 Each profile specification in profile specifications applying the traditional profile structure shall contain one  
 4056 DMTF profile class diagram that depicts the central elements of the management interface defined by the  
 4057 subject profile by showing profiled classes and associations defined by the subject profile or by a  
 4058 referenced profile (see 7.9). That DMTF profile class diagram shall have a label formatted as follows:

4059 `DiagramLabel = ProfileName ": Profile class diagram"`

4060 The schema prefix (for example, "CIM\_") shall be omitted from names of classes defined in a DMTF-  
 4061 maintained CIM schema. Prefixes should be shown if the profile defines "profile classes" that are not  
 4062 defined in a DMTF-maintained CIM schema.

4063 Profile classes defined by the subject profile shall be represented with a box that exhibits two horizontal  
 4064 compartments.

4065 The top compartment shall contain the "profile class" name as defined in 7.13, including the case where  
 4066 the name is in the deprecated format using a class name and an optional modifier.

4067 If a subject profile refers to a class adaptation defined in a referenced profile, the lower compartment shall  
 4068 contain the string:

4069 `Reference = "(See " ProfileDesignator ")"`

4070 `ProfileDesignator = ScopingProfileDesignator /`

4071 `ReferencingProfileDesignator / SpecificProfileDesignator`

4072 `ScopingProfileDesignator = "scoping profile"`

4073 ReferencingProfileDesignator = "referencing profile"

4074 SpecificProfileDesignator = RegisteredProfileName [ " profile" ]

4075 RegisteredProfileName is the registered profile name of the referenced profile.

4076 The depiction of "profile classes" shall not include properties or methods. Inheritance should only be  
 4077 shown if the profile adapts a class and its superclass.

4078 NOTE Eliminating properties and methods eliminates the risk that these elements are specified differently in the  
 4079 diagram and the text format included in profile specifications.

4080 The depiction of an association shall be labeled with the association adaptation name. If the adaptation of  
 4081 an association is defined by a referenced profile, the label for that association shall contain a reference to  
 4082 the referenced profile, using the format defined by the Reference ABNF rule.

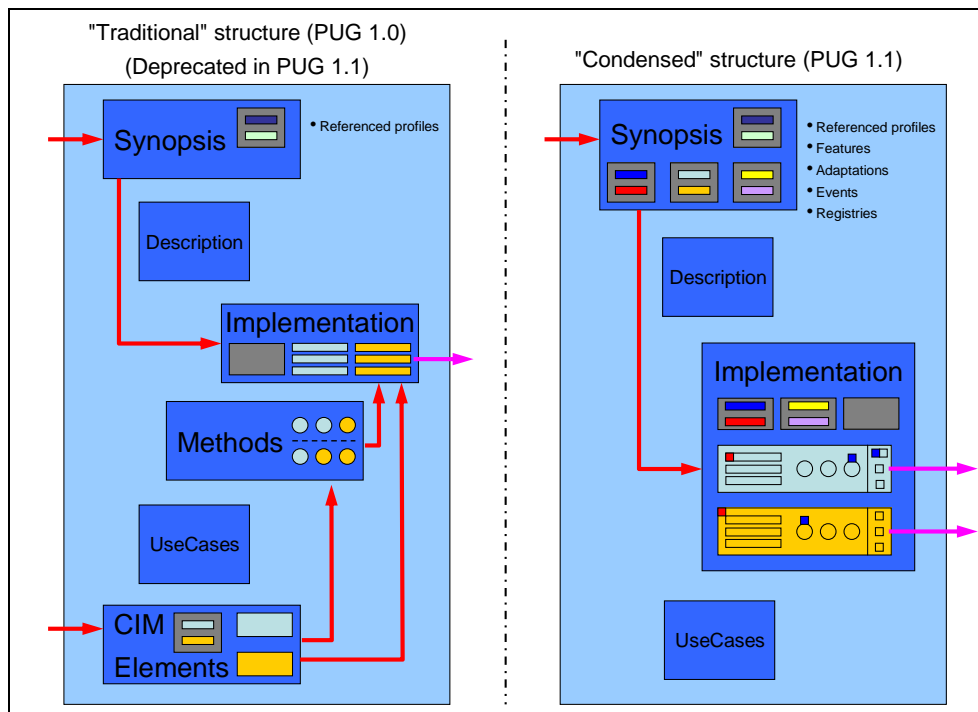
4083 If a profile defines multiple adaptations of the same adapted class for multiple purposes, then each  
 4084 adaptation should be shown separately.

4085 The depiction of association adaptations shall show multiplicities. Note that these multiplicities, which are  
 4086 the multiplicities as exposed by the association adaptation, can be constrained beyond those defined for  
 4087 the adapted association in the schema. For example, if a profile in an association adaptation requires a  
 4088 multiplicity of 1-n, but the schema defined multiplicity is 0-n, then the multiplicity shown in the class  
 4089 diagram shall reflect the narrowed multiplicity required by the association adaptation.

4090 **DEPRECATED**

4091 **10.3.4 Usage of profile specification structures**

4092 The two profile specification structures are depicted in Figure 14.



4093  
 4094

**Figure 14 – Traditional and condensed profile structures**

4095 On the left side of Figure 14, the major clauses are shown with the traditional profile specification  
 4096 structure applied. Note the two entry paths into the profile, one following through the "Synopsis" clause,  
 4097 and the other one following through the "CIM elements" clause.

4098 On the right side of Figure 14, the major clauses are shown with the condensed profile structure applied.  
 4099 Note that there is only one entry path into the profile, and that adaptations are comprehensively organized  
 4100 within the "Implementation" clause, with all pertinent information required for the implementation of a  
 4101 particular adaptation presented within one subclause. The blue and red colored squares indicate that the  
 4102 implementation of some elements is required only as the "blue" or the "red" features are implemented.

4103 **10.4 Requirements for profile specification clauses**

4104 **10.4.1 General**

4105 The requirements for profile specification clauses differ with the structure chosen for the subject profile;  
 4106 see 10.3. Table 4 lists the profile specification clauses in the order they shall appear in profile  
 4107 specifications, along with references to subclauses of this guide or documents referenced by this guide  
 4108 that detail the requirements for the specification of respective clauses in profile specifications.

4109 **Table 4 – Requirements for profile specification clauses**

| Clause name                   | Condensed structure  | Traditional structure  |
|-------------------------------|--|------------------------|
| Scope                         | Required, see <a href="#">ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2</a> , 6.2.1.            |                        |
| Normative references          | Required, see <a href="#">ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2</a> , 6.2.2.            |                        |
| Terms and definitions         | Required, see 10.4.3 and <a href="#">ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2</a> , 6.3.1. |                        |
| Symbols and abbreviated terms | Required, see <a href="#">ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2</a> , 6.3.2.            |                        |
| Conformance                   | Optional, see 10.4.4.  |                        |
| Synopsis                      | Required, see 10.4.3. Requirements differ based on the chosen structure.     |                        |
| Description                   | Required, see 10.4.6.  |                        |
| Implementation                | Required, see 10.4.7. Requirements differ based on the chosen structure.     |                        |
| Methods                       | Prohibited, content covered in "Implementation" clause; see 10.4.7.          | Required, see 10.4.8.  |
| Use cases                     | Required, see 10.4.9.  |                        |
| CIM elements                  | Prohibited, content covered in "Implementation" clause; see 10.4.7.          | Required, see 10.4.10. |

4110 Spelling of clause names and subclause names shall follow normal English grammar rules. Arbitrary  
 4111 capitalization of words should be avoided.

4112 **10.4.2 Requirements for the numbering of profile specification clauses and subclauses**

4113 [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#) requires clauses and subclauses to be numbered.

4114 An organization may opt to "demote" the clauses to subclauses at a lower heading level. For example,  
 4115 clause "6 Synopsis" may become subclause "8.6 Synopsis" or "8.2.6 Synopsis" within a larger  
 4116 aggregating document. However, the relative heading numbering shall be maintained at respective lower  
 4117 levels (that is, all headings are demoted by the same number of heading levels), and all clauses starting  
 4118 with the "Synopsis" clause shall be provided. This allows embedding profile specifications in a larger  
 4119 document while preserving a recognizable profile specification format for readers.



### 4120 **10.4.3 Requirements for the specification of the "Terms and definitions" clause**

4121 Each profile specification shall have a "Terms and definitions" clause.

4122 The "Terms and definitions" clause shall be specified as defined in [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), 6.3.1 and  
4123 Appendix D.

4124 NOTE [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#) and other ISO documents establish rigid rules with respect to the capitalization  
4125 of terms. Generally, terms are required to be in lowercase unless otherwise required by English grammar  
4126 rules.

4127 The "Terms and definitions" clause shall contain the text stated in Table 5 immediately after the heading.

#### 4128 **Table 5 – Common text for the "Terms and definitions" clause of profile specifications**

The verbal phrases "shall" ("required"), "shall not", "should" ("recommended"), "should not" ("not recommended"), "may", "need not" ("not required"), "can" and "cannot" in this document are to be interpreted as described in [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Annex H. The verbal phrases in parenthesis are alternatives for the preceding verbal phrase, for use in exceptional cases when the preceding verbal phrase cannot be used for linguistic reasons. Note that [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Annex H specifies additional alternatives. Occurrences of such additional alternatives shall be interpreted in their normal English meaning.

The terms "clause", "subclause", "paragraph", and "annex" in this document are to be interpreted as described in [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Clause 5.

The terms "normative" and "informative" in this document are to be interpreted as described in [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Clause 3. In this guide, clauses, subclauses or annexes indicated with "(informative)" as well as notes and examples do not contain normative content.

The terms defined in [DSP0004](#), [DSP0223](#) and DSP1001 apply to this profile.

### 4129 **10.4.4 Requirements for the specification of the "Conformance" clause**

4130 The specification of a conformance clause is optional.

4131 Generally, the conformance definitions defined by this guide (see clause 5) apply.

4132 Profiles may specify additional conformance rules for implementations beyond those required in 5.2; this  
4133 guide does not define rules on how to define such conformance rules in profiles.

### 4134 **10.4.5 Requirements for the specification of the "Synopsis" clause**

4135 This subclause defines requirements for the "Synopsis" clause in profile specifications.

#### 4136 **10.4.5.1 General**

4137 Each profile specification shall have a "Synopsis" clause.

4138 The "Synopsis" clause of a profile specification shall conform to the rules defined in subclauses 10.4.5.4  
4139 to 10.4.5.8.

#### 4140 **10.4.5.2 Requirements for the sequence of definitions in the "Synopsis" clause**

4141 The definitions in the "Synopsis" clause shall be in the following sequence:

- 4142 • the profile attributes, as defined in 10.4.5.4
- 4143 • the summary, as defined in 10.4.5.5
- 4144 • the table of profile references, as defined in 10.4.5.6
- 4145 • the tables of registry references, as defined in 10.4.5.7

- 4146 • the table of features, as defined in 10.4.5.8
- 4147 • the table of adaptations, as defined in 10.4.5.9
- 4148 • the table of use cases, as defined in 10.4.5.10

4149 Some of these definitions are only required if the corresponding elements are defined in the profile, and  
 4150 some are placed elsewhere when the traditional structure is used by the profile specification; this is  
 4151 detailed in the referenced subclauses.

4152 **10.4.5.3 Requirement for separate subclauses within the "Synopsis" clause**

4153 NOTE [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#) requires that no normative text be put at the beginning of a clause if that clause  
 4154 contains subclauses (to avoid "hanging" paragraphs); this is the reason for requiring separate subclauses  
 4155 in the case that any subclause is defined within the "Synopsis" clause. Such subclauses might be required,  
 4156 for example, because table cell space requirements are exceeded in tables required by other subclauses  
 4157 of 10.4.5, or because the definition of the scoping algorithm requires a separate subclause.

4158 Consequently, if any of the definitions within the "Synopsis" clause of a profile specification requires a  
 4159 separate subclause, then each of the definitions listed above needs to be put in a separate subclause  
 4160 within the Synopsis clause.

4161 **10.4.5.4 Requirements for the specification of profile attributes**

4162 **10.4.5.4.1 General**

4163 If the profile attributes are specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see 10.4.5.3),  
 4164 that subclause shall be named "Profile attributes".

4165 Profile attributes shall be listed as a sequence of attribute statements. This sequence of statements  
 4166 should be placed first in the "Synopsis" clause.

4167 The sequence of attribute statements and their format in ABNF is defined by the "Attribute statement"  
 4168 column of Table 6; corresponding values in the "Requirements" column refer to subclauses of clause 7  
 4169 that provide details about the respective profile attributes. In a profile specification the sequence of  
 4170 attribute statements should not be formatted as a table, but as a contiguous sequence of attribute value  
 4171 statements that are in the sequence and format detailed in Table 6.

4172 **Table 6 – Requirements for the specification of profile attributes**

| Attribute statement (ABNF)   | Requirement                     |
|--|---------------------------------|
| "Profile name:" WS RegisteredProfileName<br>RegisteredProfileName shall be the registered profile name; see 7.6.2.   | Required.                       |
| "Version:" WS RegisteredProfileVersion<br>RegisteredProfileVersion shall be the registered profile version; see 7.6.3.   | Required.                       |
| "Organization:" WS RegisteredOrganizationName<br>RegisteredOrganizationName shall be the registered organization name;<br>see 7.6.4.   | Required.                       |
| "Abstract indicator:" WS AbstractProfileIndicator<br>AbstractProfileIndicator shall be "True" for abstract profiles (see 7.10.1), and<br>"False" otherwise.<br>Default: "False". | Required for abstract profiles. |
| "Profile type:" WS ProfileType<br>ProfileType shall be "autonomous" for autonomous profiles (see 7.8.2), and<br>"component" for component profiles (see 7.8.3).                  | Required.                       |

|   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| "Schema name:" WS SchemaName<br>SchemaName shall be the schema name; see 7.7.3.<br>Default: "CIM".  | Optional.                          |
| "Schema version:" WS SchemaVersion<br>SchemaVersion shall be the schema version; see 7.7.2.<br>For experimental schemas, the value should be suffixed with "(Experimental)"   | Required unless "Schema:" is used. |
| "Schema organization:" WS SchemaOrganization<br>SchemaOrganization shall be the schema organization; see 7.7.4.<br>Default: "DMTF".   | Optional .                         |
| "Schema:" WS [ SchemaOrganization WS] SchemaName *WS SchemaVersion<br>SchemaOrganization, SchemaName and SchemaVersion shall be set as defined above in this table.<br>Alternative to the specification of the triplet "Schema name", "Schema version" and "Schema organization" that should be preferred if multiple schemas are referenced. | Optional.                          |
| "Central class adaptation:" WS CentralClassAdaptationName<br>CentralClassAdaptationName shall be the name of the central class adaptation; see 7.9.3.2.   | Required.                          |
| "Scoping class adaptation:" WS ScopingClassAdaptationName<br>ScopingClassAdaptationName shall be the name of the scoping class adaptation; see 7.9.3.3.   | Required for component profiles.   |
| "Scoping algorithm:" WS ScopingPath<br>For ScopingPath, see 10.4.5.4.2.   | Required for component profiles.   |
| NOTE Profile attributes shall be listed in normal text font, with the profile attribute names (the initial literal up to and including the colon) highlighted in bold font; see also the example in A.2.  |                                    |

4173 **10.4.5.4.2 Scoping path**

4174 ScopingPath shall be the scoping path; see 7.9.3.4. It shall be specified as follows:

- 4175 • If the scoping path between central class adaptation and scoping class adaptation is composed of  
4176 only one association adaptation, ScopingPath shall be the name of the association adaptation.
- 4177 • Otherwise, the definition of the scoping path shall be placed in a separate subclause of the  
4178 "Synopsis" clause, immediately after the "Profile attributes" subclause, and be named "Scoping  
4179 path". In this case, ScopingPath shall have the form "See " SubclauseNumber, where  
4180 SubclauseNumber is the number of the scoping path subclause. In the scoping path subclause the  
4181 scoping path shall be stated sequentially listing all adaptations of ordinary classes and associations  
4182 that compose the scoping path, starting with the central class adaptation and ending with the scoping  
4183 class adaptation.

4184 An example of the specification of profile attributes is provided in A.2.

4185 **10.4.5.5 Requirements for the specification of the summary**

4186 If the summary is specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see 10.4.5.3), that  
4187 subclause shall be named "Synopsis".

4188 The first paragraph of the summary shall briefly summarize the purpose of the profile such that it may be  
4189 used in other documents to describe the subject profile.

4190 Further paragraphs may provide more detailed summary information, including text that describes the  
 4191 usage of the central and the scoping class adaptations.

4192 If the subject profile is an abstract profile, the following statement shall be included as the last paragraph  
 4193 at the end of the summary:

4194 "This abstract profile shall not be directly implemented; implementations shall be based on a  
 4195 profile that is derived from this profile."

4196 An example of a summary is provided in A.2.

4197 **10.4.5.6 Requirements for the specification of the table of profile references**

4198 If the table of profile references is specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see  
 4199 10.4.5.3), that subclause shall be named "Profile references".

4200 If the subject profile references other profiles, the requirements for profile references shall be listed in a  
 4201 table of profile references, as defined in this subclause. In that table each profile reference shall conform  
 4202 to the requirements in 7.9.

4203 The table of profile references shall be labeled: "Profile references". In Table 7, requirements for columns  
 4204 in the table of profile references are defined. Each required column is described by an entry in the list  
 4205 provided in Table 7. Each list entry starts with the required name of the table column in **bold face**,  
 4206 followed by a dash and the requirements for cells under that column.

4207 **Table 7 – Requirements for columns of the table of profile references**

|  |
|--|
| <p><b>Profile reference name</b> – Cell values shall state the name of the profile reference within the subject profile; see 7.9.1.</p> <p><b>Profile name</b> – Cell values shall state the registered name of the referenced profile; see 7.9.1.3.</p> <p><b>Organization</b> – Cell values shall state the registered organization of the referenced profile; see 7.9.1.3.</p> <p><b>Version</b> – Cell values shall state the value of the major and the minor version identifier of the registered version of the referenced profile that is minimally required by the subject profile; see 7.9.1.3.</p> <p><b>Relationship</b> – Cell values shall state the type of the profile reference; see 7.9.1.2.</p> <p><b>Description</b> – Cell values shall conform to the following rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– A short description of the referenced profile and its relationship to the subject profile shall be provided. The short description should focus on the use of the referenced profile in the context of the subject profile.</li> <li>– For conditional profiles the condition shall be specified using one of the mechanisms specified in 7.4.</li> <li>– If the text in the "Description" cell would exceed a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words), the description shall be put in a separate subclause of the "Synopsis" clause that is referenced from the cell.</li> </ul> |
|--|

4208 If the subject profile does not reference other profiles, this shall be stated using the phrase "No references  
 4209 to other profiles are defined in this profile." In this case, the table shall not be included.

4210 An example of a table of profile references is provided in Annex A.2.

4211 **10.4.5.7 Requirements for the specification of the tables of registry references**

4212 If the tables of registry references are specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see  
 4213 10.4.5.3), that subclause shall be named "Registry references".

4214 If the subject profile references message registries, the message registry references shall be listed in a  
 4215 table of message registry references, as defined in this subclause. The table of message registry  
 4216 references shall be labeled: "Message registry references".

4217 If the subject profile references metric registries, the metric registry references shall be listed in a table of  
 4218 metric registry references, as defined in this subclause. The table of metric registry references shall be  
 4219 labeled: "Metric registry references".

4220 In Table 8 requirements for columns in tables of registry references are defined. Each required column is  
 4221 described by an entry in the list provided in Table 8. Each list entry starts with the required name of the  
 4222 table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for cells under that column.

4223 **Table 8 – Requirements for columns of the tables of registry references**

|   |
|---|
| <p><b>Registry reference name</b> – Cell values shall state the name of the registry reference within the subject profile; see 7.9.1.</p> <p><b>Registry identifier</b> – Cell values shall state the identification of the referenced registry; see 7.12.</p> <p><b>Organization</b> – Cell values shall state the name of the organization that owns the referenced registry; see 7.12.</p> <p><b>Version</b> – Cell values shall state the version of the referenced registry; see 7.12.</p> <p><b>Description</b> – Cell values should provide a description of the use of referenced registry within the subject profile; see 7.12.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– If the value in any Description cell would exceed a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words), a separate subclause shall be provided within the "Implementation" clause, and the description shall be provided as part of that separate subclause. The separate subclause shall be referenced from the table entry, as follows:<br/>                 "See" WS SubclauseNumber "."<br/>                 SubclauseNumber is the number of the separate subclause.</li> </ul> |
|---|

4224 **10.4.5.8 Requirements for the specification of the table of features**

4225 If the table of features is specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see 10.4.5.3),  
 4226 that subclause shall be named "Features".

4227 If the subject profile defines features (see 7.15), these shall be listed in a table of features, as defined in  
 4228 this subclause.

4229 NOTE Both the condensed and the traditional profile specification structure provide for the definition of features,  
 4230 enabling the definition of features in revisions of existing profile specifications (originally written in  
 4231 compliance to version 1.0 of this guide) by upgrading to version 1.1 of this guide. However, note that the  
 4232 upgrade may require minor formal adjustments of the original version to comply with version 1.1 of this  
 4233 guide.

4234 The table of features shall be labeled: "Features". In Table 9 requirements for columns in tables of  
 4235 features are defined. Each required column is described by an entry in the list provided in Table 9. Each  
 4236 list entry starts with the required name of the table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the  
 4237 requirements for cells under that column.

4238 **Table 9 – Requirements for columns of the table of features**

|   |
|---|
| <p><b>Feature name</b> – Cell values shall state the name of the feature; see 7.15.3.</p> <p><b>Granularity</b> – Cell values shall state whether the feature can be implemented for the profile as a whole, or for specific adaptation instances.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– If the feature can be implemented for the profile as a whole, the Granularity cell value shall be "profile".</li> <li>– If the feature can be implemented for specific adaptation instances, the Granularity cell value shall be the name of the adaptation, followed by "instance".</li> </ul> |
|---|

**Requirement** – Cell values shall state the requirement level of the feature.

The following rules apply:

- If the feature is conditional, the cell value shall be "Conditional".
- If the feature is conditional exclusive, the cell value shall be "Conditional exclusive".
- If the feature is optional, the cell value shall be "Optional".

**Description** – Cell values shall provide a description of the feature.

The following rules apply:

- The feature definition subclause in the "Implementation" clause (see 10.4.7.3) shall be referenced. No other text should be added.

4239 If the specified profile does not define features, the following text shall be stated: "No features are defined  
4240 in this profile." In this case, the table shall not be included.

4241 An example of a table of features is provided in A.2.

4242 **10.4.5.9 Requirements for the specification of the table of adaptations**

4243 The adaptations (see 7.13) defined in the subject profile shall be listed in a table of adaptations.

4244 The placement of the table depends on the profile specification structure that is applied by the subject  
4245 profile, as follows:

4246 If the traditional profile specification structure is applied by the subject profile, the table of  
4247 adaptations shall be specified in the "Overview" subclause of the "CIM elements" clause (see  
4248 10.4.10.2), and the requirements for a table of adaptations as part of the "Synopsis" clause as  
4249 specified in the remaining part of this subclause do not apply.

4250 If the condensed profile specification structure is applied by the subject profile, a table of adaptations  
4251 shall be specified as part of the "Synopsis" clause. All class adaptations (including the adaptations of  
4252 ordinary classes, of association classes, and of indication classes) defined by the subject profile shall  
4253 be listed in the table of adaptations.

4254 If the table of adaptations is specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see 10.4.5.3),  
4255 that subclause shall be named "Adaptations".

4256 The table of adaptations shall be labeled: "Adaptations". In Table 10, requirements for columns in the  
4257 table of adaptations are defined. Each required column is described by an entry in the list provided in  
4258 Table 10. Each list entry starts with the required name of the table column in **bold face**, followed by a  
4259 dash and the requirements for cells under that column.

4260 **Table 10 – Requirements for columns of the table of adaptations**

**Adaptation** – Cell values shall state the name of the adaptation; see 7.13.

The following rules apply:

- If an adaptation is based on other adaptations, the cell in the "Adaptation" column shall span all the cells in the other columns that are related to the specified adaptation.

**Elements** – Cells pertaining to elements of one adaptation are specified in separate subcells that are spanned by the cell in the "Adaptation" column.

The following rules apply:

- The first subcell shall contain the name of the adapted class.
- If base adaptations are defined, these may be stated in subsequent subcells. This should only be done for adaptations that are not described in a separate adaptation-specific subclause, as detailed with the rules for the Description column.

The following ABNF defined format applies:

```
AdaptationReference = [ ProfileName ":@" ] AdaptationName
```

If a base adaptation is defined in a referenced profile, then `ProfileRefName` shall be the profile reference name (see 7.9.1). `AdaptationName` shall be the name of the base adaptation

**Requirement** – Cell values shall state the requirement level for the adaptation; see 10.2.1.

The following rules apply:

- If an adaptation is based on other adaptations, and different requirement levels apply, these shall be specified in separate cells in this column; however, within the scope of a cell in the "Adaptation" column, if all base adaptations listed in corresponding cells in the "Elements" column are required with the same requirement level, the respective subcells in the "Requirement" column may be collapsed into one cell containing the common requirement level.
- If the implementation type (see 7.13.2.5) of an adaptation is "abstract", the cell shall contain a statement indicating that the requirement level is defined in derived adaptations.

**Description** – Cell values shall provide a description of the adaptation.

The following rules apply:

- Unless fitting into a reasonable space within the table cell (about 20 words), the adaptation description should be provided in a separate subclause of the "Adaptations" subclause within the "Implementation" clause; see 10.4.7.4.3. The adaptation specific subclause shall be referenced from the table entry, as follows:

```
"See" AdaptationSubclauseNumber "."
```

`AdaptationSubclauseNumber` shall be the number of the adaptation-specific subclause.

- If the description is provided within the table cell, it shall state the implementation type.
- If no requirements are defined beyond those defined in the schema definition of the adapted class, this may be indicated by the phrase:

```
"See CIM schema definition."
```

- If present, the subcells for the descriptions of base adaptations shall contain a reference to the subclause or profile defining the base adaptation, as follows:

```
"See " BaseReference "."
```

where `BaseReference` either refers to the subclause that describes the base adaptation, or is the internal document reference to the profile that defines the base adaptation.

4261 The adaptation table shall be subdivided into two table sections that are named as follows:

4262     • "Instantiated and embedded class adaptations"

4263     • "Indications and exceptions"

4264 Each table section shall be preceded by a row that spans all columns and contains the section name. The  
4265 table sections shall contain the entries for adaptations defined by the profile with respective  
4266 implementation types (see 7.13.2.5).

4267 The sequence in which adaptations are listed within each of these table sections is not defined in this  
4268 guide. Profiles may use any reasonable approach for that, for example an alphabetical sequence or an  
4269 order implied by dependencies of the adaptations. Also, the sequence as listed in the table of adaptations  
4270 may differ from the sequence of referenced adaptation-specific subclauses (see 10.4.7.4).

4271 If a profile does not define adaptations for indications and/or exceptions, the table still shall contain the  
4272 "Indications and exceptions" table section, with one entry stating that no adaptations for indications or  
4273 exceptions are defined.

4274 An example of a table of adaptations is provided in A.2.

4275 **10.4.5.10 Requirements for the specification of the table of use cases**

4276 A table of use cases is only required if the condensed profile specification structure is applied by the  
4277 subject profile.

4278 In this case, the table of use cases shall be specified as part of the "Synopsis" clause. All use cases  
4279 defined by the subject profile within the "Use cases" clause (see 10.4.9) shall be listed in the table of use  
4280 cases.

4281 If the table of use cases is specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see 10.4.5.3),  
4282 that subclause shall be named "Use cases".

4283 The table of use cases shall be labeled: "Use cases". In Table 11 requirements for columns in the table of  
4284 use cases are defined. Each required column is described by an entry in the list provided in Table 11.  
4285 Each list entry starts with the required name of the table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the  
4286 requirements for cells under that column.

4287 **Table 11 – Requirements for columns of the table of use cases**

|  |
|--|
| <p><b>Use case</b> – Cell values shall state the name of the use case; see 10.4.9.3.1.</p> <p><b>Description</b> – Cell values shall refer to the subclause within the "Use cases" clause that describes the use case; see 10.4.9.3.</p> |
|--|

4288 An example of a table of use cases is provided in A.2.

4289 **10.4.6 Requirements for the specification of the "Description" clause**

4290 This subclause defines requirements for the "Description" clause in profile specifications.

4291 Each profile specification shall have a "Description" clause.

4292 The "Description" clause in profile specifications

- 4293 • shall provide an overview of the subject profile.
- 4294 • should describe the management domain addressed by the subject profile, and the major object  
4295 types for which the subject profile defines adaptations.
- 4296 • should contain some or all of the following diagrams that detail the purpose of the subject  
4297 profile:
  - 4298 – The "Description" clause of profile specifications written in conformance with the  
4299 condensed structure (see 10.3.2) should contain one or more DMTF collaboration structure  
4300 diagrams (see 8.3.4) that detail the collaboration defined by the subject profile, or should  
4301 contain one or more DMTF adaptation diagrams (see 8.3.5).  
4302 Each adaptation defined by the subject profile should appear at least once in these  
4303 diagrams.
  - 4304 – The "Description" clause of profile specifications written in conformance with the traditional  
4305 structure (see 10.3.3) should contain one or more DMTF profile class diagrams (see  
4306 10.3.3.2) that detail the model defined by the subject profile.
  - 4307 – The "Description" clause may contain DMTF object diagrams (see 8.3.7) providing details  
4308 on CIM instances, their interactions, and their relationship to managed objects in managed  
4309 environments, as required by the subject profile.

4310 Table 12 lists the requirements for diagrams as part of the Description clause within profile specifications.  
4311 Note that the requirements depend on the structure chosen for the profile specification; see 10.3.



4312

**Table 12 – Profile diagram types**

| Diagram type                                | Usage requirements   |   | Description   |
|---|--|---|---------------|
|   | Traditional structure  | Condensed structure   |               |
| DMTF collaboration structure (EXPERIMENTAL) | Optional   | Optional.   | See 8.3.4.    |
| DMTF class adaptation (EXPERIMENTAL)        | Optional   | Required, unless a DMTF collaboration structure diagram is shown. | See 8.3.5.    |
| DMTF class                                  | Not defined  | Optional  | See 8.3.6.    |
| DMTF profile class (DEPRECATED)             | Required, unless the profile revision was changed to specifying adaptations in place of "profile classes". In this case a DMTF collaboration structure or a DMTF class adaptation diagram is required. | Not applicable  | See 10.3.3.2. |
| DMTF object                                 | Optional   | Optional  | See 8.3.7.    |
| DMTF sequence                               | Optional   | Optional  | See 8.3.8.    |

4313 An example of a "Description" clause is provided in A.3.

4314 **10.4.7 Requirements for the specification of the "Implementation" clause**

4315 This subclause defines requirements for the "Implementation" clause in profile specifications.

4316 **10.4.7.1 General**

4317 Each profile specification shall have an "Implementation" clause.

4318 If the profile is a derived profile that does not add specifications for implementations beyond those defined  
 4319 in its (direct and indirect) base profile(s), the "Implementation" clause shall only contain the statement "All  
 4320 implementation requirements are defined in base profile(s)."

4321 **10.4.7.2 Usage of subclauses**

4322 The "Implementation" clause should be structured into subclauses.

4323 Subclauses may introduce subtopics that apply to one or more profile elements (for example a subclause  
 4324 titled "Element discovery"), or they may introduce subtopics that address specific profile elements (for  
 4325 example, a specific adaptation defined in a subclause titled "Adaptation: Fan: CIM\_Fan").

4326 Subclauses of the "Implementation" clause should be ordered as follows:

- 4327 • Subclauses that describe the management domain and managed object types
- 4328 • Subclauses that introduce concepts
- 4329 • An optional "Features" subclause, as detailed in 10.4.7.3
- 4330 • A required "Adaptations" subclause, as detailed in 10.4.7.4

4331 NOTE [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#) requires that at each subclause level at least two subclauses are specified. For  
 4332 that reason, in the case where according to this guide only the "Adaptations" subclause would be required,  
 4333 [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#) would require another subclause of the "Implementation" clause. In this case,  
 4334 an initial subclause named "General" containing general definitions is recommended.

**4335 10.4.7.3 Requirements for the specification of features**

4336 If the subject profile defines features (see 7.15), the "Implementation" clause shall contain a separate  
4337 subclause named "Features".

4338 The "Features" subclause of the "Implementation" clause shall contain a separate subclause for each  
4339 defined feature.

4340 The title of each feature-specific subclause shall be formatted as follows:

4341 `FeatureSubclauseTitle = "Feature: " FeatureName`

4342 The value of `FeatureName` shall be the name of the feature; see 7.15.3.

4343 If the feature is conditional, that shall be stated first in the feature definition subclause, along with the  
4344 specification of the condition, following the conventions established in 10.2.3.

4345 Each feature definition subclause shall provide all of the following (in the order stated):

- 4346 • A description of the feature
- 4347 • The granularity of the feature; see 7.15.5
- 4348 • The requirement level of the feature; see 7.15.4
- 4349 • A description of one or more discovery mechanisms for the feature; see 7.15.6.

4350 The implementation requirements that result from a decision to implement a feature are not defined as  
4351 part of the feature definition subclause; see 7.15.7.

**4352 10.4.7.4 Requirements for the specification of adaptations**

4353 This subclause defines requirements for the specification of adaptations, addressing the requirements of  
4354 7.13.

**4355 10.4.7.4.1 General**

4356 The "Implementation" clause shall contain a separate subclause named "Adaptations".

4357 The "Adaptations" subclause of the "Implementation" clause shall contain a separate subclause for each  
4358 adaptation (including adaptations of association classes or indication classes) defined by the profile as  
4359 specified in 10.4.7.4.3, unless the adaptation is a trivial class adaptation.

4360 A trivial class adaptation does not define additional requirements beyond those defined by the adapted  
4361 class and its base adaptations. Trivial class adaptations typically are defined as a point of reference for  
4362 other profiles, such that referencing profiles can define adaptations based on them. The description of a  
4363 trivial class adaptation may be solely provided in the entry in the table of adaptations within the  
4364 "Synopsis" clause if the space requirements for table cells are met; see 10.4.5.9.

4365 The sequence in which adaptation-specific subclauses appear in the "Adaptations" subclause is not  
4366 defined in this guide. Profiles may use any reasonable approach for that, for example an alphabetical  
4367 sequence or an order implied by dependencies of the adaptations. Also, the sequence as listed in the  
4368 table of adaptations (see 10.4.5.9) may differ from the sequence of referenced adaptation-specific  
4369 subclauses.

**4370 10.4.7.4.2 Requirements for the specification of conventions**

4371 The "Adaptations" subclause of the "Implementation" clause shall contain a subclause named  
4372 "Conventions" that specifies the conventions applied within the profile specification for the definition of  
4373 adaptations. The "Conventions" subclause shall precede any subclause defining adaptations.

4374 This guide requires profiles to repeat certain schema requirements (see 7.13.2.8.3). Within a profile  
 4375 specification, in these cases the convention shall be to state the name of the qualifier if its effective value  
 4376 is True, and to not state the name of the qualifier if its effective value is False. This convention shall be  
 4377 applied for the Key and the Required qualifiers as part of property requirements as required by 7.13.2.8.3  
 4378 and as detailed in 10.4.7.4.3, and for the In, Out, and Required qualifiers as part of method parameter  
 4379 requirements as detailed in 10.4.7.4.6. If applied anywhere in a profile specification, this convention shall  
 4380 explicitly be stated as part of the "Conventions" subclause, along with a brief description of what the  
 4381 respective qualifier value means.

4382 This guide requires profiles to select [DSP0223](#) as the operations specification that defines the operations  
 4383 for that the profile defines operation requirements; see 7.13.3.3.1. Profiles are required to specify  
 4384 operation requirements individually per adaptation (see 10.4.7.4.7). This requirement shall be stated in  
 4385 the form of a respective convention within the "Conventions" subclause.

4386 An example of an adaptation related "Conventions" subclause is provided in A.4.3.

#### 4387 **10.4.7.4.3 Requirements for the specification of individual adaptations**

4388 Each adaptation definition subclause within the "Adaptation" subclause of the "Implementation" clause  
 4389 shall be titled

```
4390     AdaptationClauseTitle = [ "Adaptation" [ *WSP ] ":" *WSP ] AdaptationName
4391     [ *WSP ] ":" *WSP AdaptedClassName
```

4392 *AdaptationName* is the name of the adaptation (see 7.13.2), and *AdaptedClassName* is the name of  
 4393 the adapted class.

4394 Each adaptation-specific subclause shall define implementation requirements. Implementation  
 4395 requirements may be defined directly within the adaptation-specific subclause, or within separate  
 4396 subclauses.

4397 Each adaptation-specific subclause shall state the implementation type of the adaptation (see 7.13.2.5).

4398 Requirements for elements of adaptations, such as base adaptations, alert messages, metrics,  
 4399 properties, methods, and operations, shall be stated in the form of an "Element requirements" table. In  
 4400 that table each entry shall be assigned a requirement level. If needed, the table entries may refer to other  
 4401 subclauses that provide detail information.

4402 NOTE Implementation requirements may also be imposed from other sources, such as the schema or the  
 4403 operations specification. Clause 9 details a merge algorithm that produces a set of implementation  
 4404 adaptations, merging the implementation requirements from those various sources.

4405 The "Element requirements" table listing required elements of the adaptation shall be labeled:

```
4406     ElementRequirementsTableTitle = AdaptationName [ *WSP ] ":" *WSP "Element
4407     requirements"
```

4408 *AdaptationName* is the name of the adaptation (see 7.13.2).

4409 Table 13 defines requirements for columns in adaptation element tables. Each required column is  
 4410 described by an entry in the list provided in Table 13. Each list entry starts with the required name of the  
 4411 table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for cells under that column.

4412

**Table 13 – Requirements for columns of "Element requirements" tables**

**Element** – Cell values shall state the name of the base element, property, method, or operation, or the identification of a metric for which the subject profile defines requirements as part of the defined adaptation.

The following rules apply:

- If base adaptations are defined, these shall be stated, using the following format:

```
AdaptationReference = [ ProfileRefName ":@" ] AdaptationName
```

If a base adaptation is defined in a referenced profile, then `ProfileRefName` shall be the profile reference name (see 7.9.1). `AdaptationName` shall be the name of the base adaptation.

- If an alert indication adaptation refers to one or more alert messages defined in a message registry (see 7.13.4), the identifier of the alert message shall be stated, using the following format:

```
MessageIdentification = MessageRegistryRefName ":@" MessageID
```

`MessageRegistryRefName` shall be the message registry reference name (see 7.12) of the registry in which the message on which the indication is based is defined, and `MessageID` shall be the message id of that message. The message id is the concatenation of the value of the PREFIX attribute and the SEQUENCE\_NUMBER attribute from the MESSAGE\_ID element that describes the message in the message registry.

- Array property names shall be suffixed with "[ ]".
- Method names and operation names shall be suffixed with "( )".
- Names of association traversal operations (see 10.4.7.4.8) shall be specified as follows:

```
OpName "( )" [ " WS "for" WS AssocAdaptationSet ]
```

where `OpName` is the operation name, as defined by the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1).

If the "for" suffix is not specified, the operation requirement affects all association adaptations specified by the subject profile that reference the adaptation defined in the subclause containing the table.

If the "for" suffix is specified, the operation requirement affects a subset of the association adaptations specified by the subject profile that reference the adaptation defined in the subclause containing the table. In this case, `AssocAdaptationSet` shall list that subset, as follows:

```
AssocAdaptationSet = AssocAdaptation [ *WSP ", " *WSP AssocAdaptationSet ]
```

`AssocAdaptation` shall identify an association adaptation specified by the subject profile that references the adaptation defined in the subclause containing the table.

- Identifications of metric-defining metric requirements shall be stated using the following format:

```
MetricReference = MetricRegistryRefName [ *WSP ] ":@" *WSP METRICID
```

`MetricRegistryRefName` is the name of the metric registry reference that references the metric registry within that the metric for the metric requirement is defined, and `METRICID` identifies the metric within the metric registry, as defined in [DSP8020](#).

**Requirement** – Cell values shall state the requirement level of the element requirement.

- The requirement level shall be stated in conformance to the conventions defined in 10.2.1.
- For property requirements, the presentation requirement level (see 7.3.1) shall be stated.
- If the profile allows the value Null for the property (see 7.13.2.10.4), the requirement level may be amended, as follows:

```
Requirement = RequirementLevel *WSP ", " *WSP "NullOK"
```

`RequirementLevel` is the requirement level stated in conformance to the conventions defined in 10.2.1.

- If a property requirement also contains property initialization value requirements (see 7.13.2.11.2) and/or property modification value requirements (see 7.13.2.11.3), these shall be placed into a separate subclause that is referenced in by the value in the "Description" cell (as detailed under "Description").

**Description** – Cell values shall conform to the following specifications:

The following rules apply:

- Repetition of the effective qualifier values from the schema definition of the adapted class:
  - The convention requirements defined in 10.4.7.4.2 apply.
  - If the effective value of the Key qualifier is True for a property, the word "Key" shall be listed first in the description of the property requirements; if the effective value is False, the name of the qualifier shall not be listed.
  - If the effective value of the Required qualifier is True for a property, the word "Required" shall be listed first in the description of the property requirements; if the effective value is False, the name of the qualifier shall not be listed. Note that the meaning of the Required qualifier is that the value of the qualified element shall not be Null.
  - If both qualifiers have the effective value True, their names shall be presented in the form of a comma separated list.
- If the requirement level is "conditional" or "conditional exclusive", and unless the condition is already stated in the "Requirement" column, the condition shall be stated here, as detailed in 10.2.3.
- The managed object type that is modeled by the adaptation.
- The definition of additional requirements shall be stated, as follows:
  - Property requirements shall be specified as detailed in 10.4.7.4.4.
  - Method requirements shall be specified as detailed in 10.4.7.4.6.
  - Operation requirements shall be specified as detailed in 10.4.7.4.7 and 10.4.7.4.8.
- The keyword "Deprecated" shall be stated if the required element is marked deprecated by the profile, in the schema definition or in the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1); for details, see 7.19.

If present, and if defined in the subject profile, the cell for the description of a base adaptation shall contain a reference to the subclause defining the base adaptation, as follows:

```
"See " SubclauseNumber "."
```

where `SubclauseNumber` is the number of the subclause containing the definition of the base adaptation.

If defined in a referenced profile, the cell for the description of a base adaptation shall contain a reference to the referenced profile defining the base adaptation, as follows:

```
"See " ProfileReference "."
```

where `ProfileReference` is the internal document reference to the profile that defines the base adaptation.

- If present, the cell for descriptions of an alert message should contain a reference to the message registry defining the alert message, as follows:

```
"See " MessageRegistryReference "."
```

where `MessageRegistryReference` is the internal document reference to the message registry that defines the alert message.

- Unless fitting into a reasonable space within the table cell (about 20 words), the element description should be placed in a separate subclause of the adaptation-specific subclause, and referenced from the table cell.

NOTE Version 1.0 of this guide defined "Notes" as the title of the third column; this was changed to "Description" for coherent definition of tables specified in this guide. Many profiles based on version 1.0 of this guide use "Description" already.

4413 Depending on the presence of respective requirements, adaptation element tables shall be subdivided  
 4414 into table sections. Each table section shall be preceded by a row that spans all columns and contains the  
 4415 section name. The following conventions should be applied:

- 4416 • If base adaptations are defined, these should be listed in a table section named `Base`  
4417 `adaptations`
- 4418 • If alert messages are referenced as part of an alert indication adaptation, the alert message  
4419 references should be listed in a table section named `Alert messages`
- 4420 • If metric definitions are referenced as part of a adaptation defining metric requirements, the  
4421 metric definition references should be listed in a table section named `Metrics`
- 4422 • If property requirements are defined, these should be listed in a table section named  
4423 `Properties`
- 4424 • If method requirements are defined, these should be listed in a table section named `Methods`
- 4425 • If operation requirements are defined, these should be listed in a table section named  
4426 `Operations`

4427 Requirements for optional properties, methods, or operations shall not be listed unless the profile defines  
4428 additional requirements for these elements beyond those defined in the schema or in the operations  
4429 specification (see 7.13.3.3.1).

#### 4430 **10.4.7.4.4 Requirements for the specification of property requirements**

4431 This subclause details the specification of property requirements in profile specifications, addressing the  
4432 requirements of 7.13.2.8.

4433 Property requirements not fitting into the "Element requirements" table shall be placed in a separate  
4434 subclause of the adaptation specific subclause defining the respective adaptation. In this case, the title of  
4435 the property-specific subclause shall be formatted as follows:

```
4436     PropertySubclauseTitle = "Property" *WSP ":" WS [ AdaptationName *WSP ":"
4437     *WSP ] PropertyName [ "[ ]" ]
```

4438 The square brackets after `PropertyName` are required for array properties.

4439 As required in 7.13.2.8, property requirements should specify a relationship to the aspect of managed  
4440 objects represented by adaptation instances that is reflected by the property.

4441 Property requirements may specify value constraints (see 7.13.2.8.4); in this case, the conventions  
4442 defined in 10.2.4 shall be applied.

4443 Property requirements may specify a default value, as detailed in 10.2.4.1.

4444 Property requirements of adaptations with the "instantiated" implementation type may contain input value  
4445 requirement (see 7.13.2.11); if present, input value requirements shall be specified as defined in  
4446 10.4.7.4.5.

4447 Property requirements on CIM references shall state the multiplicity, as detailed in 10.2.4.2.

#### 4448 **10.4.7.4.5 Requirements for the specification of input value requirements**

4449 Input value requirements may be specified as part of property requirements (see 10.4.7.4.4), or as part of  
4450 parameter requirements in method requirements (see 10.4.7.4.6).

4451 Requirements for input values defined by the subject profile shall be provided in an input value  
4452 requirements table.

4453 An input value requirements table shall be labeled:

4454        `InputValueTableTitle = ElementName "( )" *WSP ":" WS ValueType "value`  
 4455        `requirements"`

4456        `ElementName = PropertyName / ParameterName`

4457        `ValueType = "Initialization" / "Modification" / "Input"`

4458        `ElementName` is the name of the property or parameter for which input value requirements are specified.  
 4459        For properties, only the value types "Initialization" and "Modification" apply; for parameters  
 4460        only the value type "Input" applies.

4461        In Table 15, requirements for columns in input value requirements tables are defined. Each required  
 4462        column is described by an entry in the list provided in Table 15. Each list entry starts with the required  
 4463        name of the table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for cells under that  
 4464        column.

4465        **Table 14 – Requirements for columns in "Input value requirements" tables**

**Input value** – Cell values shall state the required input value.

**Requirement** – Cell values shall state the requirement level of the input value requirement. The requirement level shall be stated in conformance to the conventions defined in 10.2.1.

**Description** – Cell values shall provide details about the use of the input value as required by the subject profile.

The following rules apply:

- If the schema descriptions of a specific input value adequately describe its use as required by the subject profile, then the method-specific subclause shall refer to the method parameter description in the schema with the statement "See schema description".
- Unless fitting into a reasonable space within the table cell (about 20 words), the input value requirement description should be placed in a subclause of the method-specific subclause and referenced from the table cell.

4466        **10.4.7.4.6 Requirements for the specification of method requirements**

4467        This subclause details the specification of method requirements in profile specifications, addressing the  
 4468        requirements of 7.13.3.2, namely the specification of constraints on methods and their parameters  
 4469        according to the requirements of 7.13.3.2.2, the specification of the method semantics as required in  
 4470        7.13.3.2.3 and the specification of the reporting of method errors as required in 7.13.3.2.4.

4471        Method requirements not fitting into the "Element requirements" table defined in 10.4.7.4.3 shall be  
 4472        placed in a separate subclause of the adaptation specific subclause defining the respective adaptation;  
 4473        this applies to all method requirements that define parameter requirements.

4474        If specified, the title of the method-specific subclause shall be formatted as follows:

4475        `MethodSubclauseTitle = "Method" *WSP ":" WS [ AdaptationName *WSP ":" *WSP`  
 4476        `] MethodName "( )"`

4477        If stated, `AdaptationName` shall be the name of the adaptation. `MethodName` shall be the name of the  
 4478        method as defined by the profile.

4479        If the method requirement is defined with a requirement level other than "mandatory", the requirement  
 4480        level shall be repeated, applying the conventions defined in 10.2.1.

4481        The method description shall detail the semantics of the method in prose text, addressing the  
 4482        requirements of 7.13.3.2.3. The method description may contain informal references to use cases (see  
 4483        10.4.9).

4484 Requirements for method parameters defined by the subject profile shall be provided in a method  
 4485 parameter requirements table.

4486 A method parameter requirements table shall be labeled:

```
4487     MethodParameterTableTitle = [ AdaptationName *WSP ":" WS ] MethodName
4488     "( )" *WSP ":" WS Parameter requirements"
```

4489 In Table 15, requirements for columns in method parameter requirements tables are defined. Each  
 4490 required column is described by an entry in the list provided in Table 15. Each list entry starts with the  
 4491 required name of the table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for cells under  
 4492 that column.

4493 **Table 15 – Requirements for columns in "Method parameter requirements" tables**

|  |
|--|
| <p><b>Name</b> – Cell values shall state the parameter name.</p> <p><b>Description</b> – Cell values shall provide details about the use of the parameter as required by the subject profile.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– If the effective value of one or more of the following qualifiers:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– In, Out, Required</li> </ul>                             defined by the schema definition of the adapted class is True for a method parameter, the name of that qualifier shall be listed first in the description of the method parameter in the method parameter table; if the effective value is False, the name of the qualifier shall not be listed. If more than one of these qualifiers have the effective value True, their names shall be presented in the form of a comma separated list. The convention requirements defined in 10.4.7.4.2 apply.                         </li> <li>– If the schema descriptions of a parameter adequately describe its use as required by the subject profile, then the method-specific subclause shall refer to the method parameter description in the schema with the statement "See schema description".</li> <li>– Value constraints may be specified; in this case, the conventions defined in 10.2.4 shall be applied.</li> <li>– A default value may be specified, as detailed in 7.13.2.9</li> <li>– Unless fitting into a reasonable space within the table cell (about 20 words), the description should be placed in a subclause of the method-specific subclause that is referenced from the table cell.</li> <li>– If input parameter value requirements (see 7.13.2.11.4) are specified for a parameter, then the parameter description shall be placed in a subclause of the method-specific subclause that is referenced from the "Description" table cell. In this case the parameter specific subclause shall also contain the input parameter value requirements, in the format required in 10.4.7.4.5.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE Version 1.0 of this guide defined a Qualifiers column and a Type column; these were dropped with version 1.1 of this guide. Instead, the requirement for repeating the effective value of schema defined qualifiers was replaced by the first rule defined for the Description column above; repeating the schema defined type of a parameter is no longer required. The former "Description/Values" column is now titled "Description" for coherent definition of tables specified in this guide.</p> |
|--|

4494 The method parameter requirements table shall contain a special parameter named "ReturnValue" that  
 4495 describes the use of return values as required by the subject profile.

4496 If the schema definition of method return values does not adequately describe their use as required by  
 4497 the subject profile, that description shall be provided in the corresponding cell in the method parameter  
 4498 requirements table or a subclause referenced from there.

4499 If the schema definition of method return values adequately describe their use as required by the subject  
 4500 profile, the description should refer to the schema. For example, an Example Fan profile describing return  
 4501 values for the RequestStateChange( ) method applied to instances of the CIM\_Fan class representing  
 4502 fans might state "For return values, see the schema definition of the CIM\_EnabledLogicalElement class."

4503 The reporting of method errors as required in 7.13.3.2.4 shall be specified as follows:



- 4504           • If the subject profile defines requirements for standard messages for a method, these shall be  
4505           stated as defined in 10.4.7.4.9.
- 4506           • If the subject profile defines additional constraints on CIM status codes for a method, these shall  
4507           be stated as defined in 10.4.7.4.9.

#### 4508 **10.4.7.4.7 Requirements for the specification of operation requirements**

4509           Operation requirements not fitting into the "Element requirements" table shall be placed in a separate  
4510           subclause of the adaptation specific subclause defining the respective adaptation. In this case, the title of  
4511           the operation-specific subclause shall be formatted as follows:

```
4512           OperationSubclauseTitle = "Operation" *WSP ":" WS [ AdaptationName *WSP
4513           ":" *WSP ] OperationName "( )"
```

4514           If stated, `AdaptationName` shall be the name of the adaptation. `OperationName` shall identify the  
4515           operation (that is defined in the operations specification - see 7.13.3.3.1) for that operation requirements  
4516           are defined; see 10.4.7.4.2. The operation requirements shall be based on the definition of operations in  
4517           the operations specification.

4518           If the operation requirement is defined with a requirement level other than "mandatory", the requirement  
4519           level shall be repeated, applying the conventions defined in 10.2.1.

4520           Operation requirements may extend the behavior defined in the referenced operations specification (for  
4521           example, by requiring specific effects on the managed environment); the description of such extensions  
4522           should include all side effects and expected results in the managed environment.

4523           The reporting of operation errors as required in 7.13.3.3.6 shall be specified as follows:

- 4524           • If the subject profile defines requirements for standard messages for an operation, these shall  
4525           be stated as defined in 10.4.7.4.9.
- 4526           • If the subject profile defines additional constraints on CIM status code values for an operation,  
4527           these shall be stated as defined in 10.4.7.4.9.

#### 4528 **10.4.7.4.8 Requirements for the specification of operations related to association traversal**

4529           Operations that result in associated or association instances (or instance paths) relative to a source  
4530           instance are called association traversal operations. Profiles shall define the requirements for association  
4531           traversal operations as part of the operation requirements of adaptations that are referenced by  
4532           association adaptations, not as part of the operation requirements of the association adaptations  
4533           themselves.

4534           In addition, a particular adaptation defined by the subject profile can be the source point for the traversal  
4535           of more than one association adaptation. If in this case the requirements are different for each association  
4536           adaptation that can be traversed, then separate operation requirements are required for each traversable  
4537           association within the definition of that source adaptation.

4538           For example, if a profile defines operations as defined in [DSP0223](#) in order to traverse its `SystemDevice`  
4539           adaptation of the `CIM_SystemDevice` association, the requirements for association traversal operations  
4540           such as the `Associator()` and `AssociatorNames()` operations would not be specified as part of the  
4541           operation requirements of the `SystemDevice` adaptation; instead, the operation requirements for  
4542           association traversal operations would be specified as part of the operation requirements of adaptations  
4543           referenced by the `SystemDevice` association adaptation, in this case for example a `System` adaptation of  
4544           the `CIM_System` class and a `LogicalDevice` adaptation the `CIM_LogicalDevice` class.

4545           NOTE    Associations may be adapted such that adaptations of subclasses of the classes referenced by the  
4546           adapted association are referenced; see 7.13.2.8.

4547 **EXPERIMENTAL**4548 **10.4.7.4.9 Requirements for the specification of error reporting requirements**

4549 If the subject profile does not define error reporting requirements for a method (see 7.13.3.2.4) or  
 4550 operation (see 7.13.3.3.6), no error reporting requirements shall be defined in the method-specific or  
 4551 operation-specific subclause; instead, the subclause should contain a statement such as "No error  
 4552 reporting requirements are defined." Alternatively, if the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1 and  
 4553 10.4.7.4.2) defines error reporting requirements, a statement such as

4554 "For error reporting requirements, see" OpSpec "."

4555 should be used, with OpSpec referring to the operations specification.

4556 NOTE These statements are not required for method or operation requirements solely described through a table  
 4557 entry in the "Element requirements" table (see 10.4.7.4.3), because in this case there is no method-  
 4558 specific or operation-specific subclause.

4559 If a profile defines error reporting requirements (see 7.13.3.2.4 and 7.13.3.3.6), these shall be defined in  
 4560 an error reporting requirements table.

4561 The error reporting requirements table shall be labeled as follows:

4562 ErrorReportingRequirementsTableTitle = ActivityName "( )" \*WSP ":" WS  
 4563 Error reporting requirements"

4564 ActivityName = MethodName / OperationName

4565 MethodName is name of the method defined in the profile for which error reporting requirements are  
 4566 defined. OperationName is name of the operation (defined in the operations specification - see  
 4567 7.13.3.3.1) for which the profile defines profile-specific error reporting requirements.

4568 In Table 16 requirements for columns of the error reporting requirements table are defined. Each column  
 4569 is described by an entry in the list provided in Table 16. Each list entry starts with the required name of  
 4570 the table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for each cell within that column.

4571 **Table 16 – Requirements for columns of the "Error reporting requirements" table**

**Reporting mechanism** – Each cell values shall identify an error reporting mechanisms.

The following rules apply:

- Error reporting mechanisms shall be listed using the following format:

ErrorReportingMechanism = MessageIdentificationList / CimStatusCode

MessageIdentificationList = MessageIdentification [ WS "," WS  
 MessageIdentificationList ]

MessageIdentification = MessageRegistryRefName ":@" MessageID

- MessageRegistryRefName shall be the message registry reference name (see 10.4.5.7) of the registry in which the standard error message is defined, and MessageID shall be the message id of that error message. The message id is the concatenation of the value of the PREFIX attribute and the SEQUENCE\_NUMBER attribute from the MESSAGE\_ID element that describes the message in the message registry.

CimStatusCode shall be a CIM status code.

- The order of error reporting mechanisms listed in the table does not establish an order for their selection in case of respective error situations. However, a profile may establish that interpretation for individual or for all error reporting requirements specified in the profile. Note that some operations specifications imply an order for in their error reporting requirements.

**Requirement** – Cell values shall state the requirement level of the input value requirement.

The requirement level shall be stated in conformance to the conventions defined in 10.2.1.

**Description** – Cell values shall state the message text (abbreviated, if appropriate).

- Unless fitting into a reasonable space within the table cell (about 20 words), the message description should be placed in a separate subclause and referenced from the table

4572 An example of an error reporting requirements table is provided in A.4.4.

4573 **EXPERIMENTAL**

---

4574

4575 **DEPRECATED**

4576 Minor revisions of profiles written in conformance with version 1.0 of this guide may continue using a  
 4577 format as defined by Table 17 instead of the format defined in Table 16. However, return values and  
 4578 messages are alternatives. Profiles should not define the use of return values for situations that result in a  
 4579 CIM error, because in this case the method or operation does not return and no return value is returned.  
 4580 Either an operation or method is successful at the operations level and returns a return value, or it is not  
 4581 successful at the operations level, resulting in a CIM error containing zero or more messages.

4582 **Table 17 – Requirements for columns of the standard message table**

**(return) Message ID** – Cell values shall state a return value in parenthesis followed by the name of the registering organization and the message ID from that organization.

**Message** – Cell values shall state the message text (abbreviated, if appropriate).

4583 Each table cell should contain not more than a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words). If more text  
 4584 is required, respective content shall be placed in a separate subclause and referenced from the table.

4585 **DEPRECATED**

---

4586 **10.4.7.4.10 Requirements for the specification of metric requirements**

4587 Metric requirements not fitting into the table defined in 10.4.7.4.3 shall be placed in a separate subclause  
 4588 of the subclause defining the respective adaptation.

4589 If specified, the title of the metric-specific subclause shall be formatted as follows:

4590 `MetricSubclauseTitle = "Metric: " MetricName`

4591 `MetricName` shall be the name of the metric as defined in the referenced metric registry.

4592 If the metric requirement is defined with a requirement level other than "mandatory", the requirement level  
 4593 shall be repeated, applying the conventions defined in 10.2.1.

4594 Metric requirements should detail the semantics of the metric as required in 7.13.3.5.

4595 **10.4.7.4.11 Requirements for the specification of instance requirements**

4596 Each adaptation definition subclause that defines an adaptation of an ordinary class or of an association  
 4597 class shall state instance requirements, as defined in 7.13.3.4. Instance requirements may be specified  
 4598 as part of the implementation requirements, or may be specified in a separate subclause.

**4599 10.4.7.4.12 Requirements for the specification of indication-generation requirements**

4600 Each adaptation definition subclause that defines an adaptation of an indication class shall state  
4601 indication-generation requirements, as defined in 7.13.4.1. Indication-generation requirements may be  
4602 specified as part of the implementation requirements, or may be specified in a separate subclause.  
4603

4604 **DEPRECATED**

4605 Profile specifications that apply the condensed profile specification structure (see 10.3.2) shall not contain  
 4606 a "Methods" clause because in this case respective content is already specified as part of adaptation  
 4607 definitions within the "Implementation" clause; see 10.4.7.4.6 and 10.4.7.4.7.

4608 **10.4.8 Requirements for the specification of the "Methods" clause**

4609 This subclause details requirements for the "Methods" clause in profile specifications.

4610 **10.4.8.1 General**

4611 Profile specifications that apply the traditional profile specification structure (see 10.3.3) shall contain a  
 4612 "Methods" clause.

4613 **10.4.8.2 Requirements for the specification of methods**

4614 This subclause specifies the definition of method requirements in profile specifications that apply the  
 4615 traditional profile specification structure.

4616 **10.4.8.2.1 General**

4617 The "Methods" clause shall contain an "Extrinsic methods" subclause.

4618 If the profile specification specifies a specialized profile that does not add requirements for methods, but  
 4619 one or more of its base profile(s) defines requirements for methods, the "Extrinsic methods" subclause  
 4620 shall contain only the statement "All method requirements are defined in base profile(s)."

4621 If the profile specification specifies a profile that does not add adaptations for extrinsic methods, the  
 4622 "Extrinsic methods" subclause shall contain only the statement "No method requirements are defined."

4623 **10.4.8.2.2 Method-specific subclauses**

4624 Each extrinsic method that is referenced by a class adaptation defined in a subject profile shall be  
 4625 specified in a separate subclause of the "Extrinsic methods" subclause.

4626 The title of method-specific subclauses shall be formatted as follows:

4627 `MethodSubclauseTitle = ClassAdaptationName "." MethodName "( )"`

4628 `ClassAdaptationName` shall be the name of the class adaptation. `MethodName` shall be the name of  
 4629 the method.

4630 Method-specific subclauses shall be referenced from the subclause of the "CIM elements" clause that  
 4631 defines the class adaptation referencing the method; see 10.4.10.3.

4632 The method-specific subclause should provide a description detailing the semantics of the method as  
 4633 required in 7.13.3.2. The description may contain references to use cases (see 10.4.9).

4634 The description of the method parameters required by the subject profile shall be provided in a table.

4635 The table shall be labeled:

4636 `ParameterTableTitle = MethodName "( ) : Parameters"`

4637 In Table 18 requirements for columns in method parameter tables are defined. Each required column is  
 4638 described by an entry in the list provided in Table 18. Each list entry starts with the required name of the  
 4639 table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for cells under that column.

4640

**Table 18 – Requirements for columns in method parameter tables**

|   |
|---|
| <p><b>Qualifiers</b> – Cell values shall state parameter qualifiers as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– The cell value shall list the textual value "In" if and only if the effective value of the In qualifier for the parameter is True.</li> <li>– The cell value shall list the textual value "Out" if and only if the effective value of the Out qualifier for the parameter is True.</li> <li>– The cell value shall list the textual value "Req" if and only if the effective value of the Required qualifier for the parameter is True.</li> <li>– A profile specification shall not change the interpretation of the value of the schema-defined In, Out, and Required qualifiers; it shall just present their effective values.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE The textual value "Req" in a cell under the "Qualifiers" column does not indicate whether or not the profile requires an implementation of the parameter; however, a profile may establish value constraints on parameters (see 7.13.3.2).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Multiple textual values shall be separated by commas.</li> </ul> <p><b>Name</b> – Cell values shall state the parameter name.</p> <p><b>Type</b> – Cell values shall state the parameter type.</p> <p><b>Description/Values</b> – Cell values shall provide details about the use of the parameter as required by the profile.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– If value constraints are defined, the conventions defined in 10.2.4 shall be applied.</li> <li>– The value in a Description/Value table cell should contain not more than a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words). Longer text passages should be placed in a subclause of the method-specific subclause and referenced from the table cell.</li> </ul> |
|---|

4641 If the schema descriptions of method parameters adequately describe the use of the method parameters  
 4642 as required by the subject profile, then the method-specific subclause shall refer to the method parameter  
 4643 description in the schema with this statement: "See schema description."

4644 If the schema descriptions of method return values does not adequately describe their use as required by  
 4645 the subject profile, the method-specific subclause shall provide a table specifying return values.

4646 The table shall be labeled:

4647 `ReturnValueTableTitle = MethodName "( ) : Return values"`

4648 In Table 19 requirements for columns of the return value table are defined. Each column is described by  
 4649 an entry in the list provided in Table 19. Each list entry starts with the required name of the table column  
 4650 in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for each cell within that column.

4651 **Table 19 – Requirements for columns of the return value table**

|   |
|---|
| <p><b>Value</b> – Cell values shall state the numeric return value followed by the corresponding string description in parentheses. The description shall not be enclosed in quotes.</p> <p>Example: "1 (Not Implemented)".</p> <p><b>Description</b> – Cell values shall provide details about the situation indicated by the return value.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– If a return value only applies under certain conditions, this shall be stated in the following form:<br/>             "Applicable only if the " ConditionalElement " is implemented."</li> <li>– The value in a Description table cell should contain not more than a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words). Longer text passages should be placed in a subclause of the method-specific subclause and referenced from the table cell.</li> </ul> |
|---|

4652 If the schema descriptions of method return values adequately describe their use as required by the  
 4653 subject profile, the method-specific subclause should refer to the schema. For example, an Example Fan  
 4654 profile describing return values for the RequestStateChange( ) method applied to instances of the  
 4655 CIM\_Fan class representing fans might state, "For return values, see the schema definition of the  
 4656 CIM\_EnabledLogicalElement class."

4657 If the subject profile specifies the use of standard messages for a method, these shall be stated as  
 4658 defined in 10.4.7.4.9. If the subject profile does not specify use of standard messages for a method, no  
 4659 table shall be provided in the method-specific subclause; instead, the method-specific subclause shall  
 4660 contain the statement: "No standard messages are defined."

4661 **10.4.8.3 Requirements for the specification of the "Operations" subclause**

4662 This subclause details requirements for the "Operations" subclause of the "Methods" clause in profile  
 4663 specifications.

4664 **10.4.8.3.1 General**

4665 The "Methods" clause should contain a "Generic operations" subclause.

4666 If the profile specification specifies a specialized profile that does not add requirements for operations, the  
 4667 "Generic operations" subclause shall contain only the statement: "All operation requirements are defined  
 4668 in base profile(s)."

4669 **10.4.8.3.2 Requirements for the specification of the "Profile conventions for operations"  
 4670 subclause**

4671 The "Generic operations" subclause shall contain a "Profile conventions for operations" subclause unless  
 4672 the profile is a specialized profile that does not add specifications for operations beyond those defined in  
 4673 its base profile(s).

4674 The "Profile conventions for operations" subclause shall specify conventions applied by the profile for the  
 4675 specification of requirements for operations; it shall follow the method-specific subclauses (if any).

4676 The "Profile conventions for operations subclause" shall state the operations specification that rules the  
 4677 definition of operations in the profile, as required in 7.13.3.3. For example, "This profile defines operations  
 4678 in terms of [DSP0223](#)."

4679 Table 20 defines three options, one of which shall be applied by a profile specification for the "Generic  
 4680 operations" subclause.

4681 **Table 20 – Profile convention options**

| Option  | Requirements for the Intrinsic operations subclause   |
|---|---|
| Option 1 – Table includes each operation for each class.  | <b>Deprecated</b> with version 1.0.1; replaced by option 2, with additional requirements specified in 10.4.8.3.3.<br><br>"Support for operations for each profile class (including associations) is specified in the following subclauses. Each of these subclauses includes a table listing all the operations supported by this profile. Compliant implementations of this profile shall support all these operations." |
| Option 2 – Table includes operations with profile-specific requirements. The operations in the default list apply to the extent detailed in | The "Profile conventions for operations" subclause of the "Methods" clause shall contain the text:<br><br>"For each profile class (including associations), the implementation requirements for operations, including for those in the following default list, are specified in class-specific subclauses of OpScNumber."<br><br>OpScNumber is the number of the Operations subclause of the Methods clause.              |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>adaptation-specific subclauses of the "Methods" clause.</p>   | <p>A profile may define a default list of operations, as follows:<br/>         "The default list of operations is as follows:<br/>             operation-1<br/>             operation-2<br/>             ..."</p> <p>The applicability of the default list shall be specified in adaptation-specific subclauses of the "Operations" subclause of the "Methods" clause; see 10.4.8.3.3.</p>   |
| <p>Option 3 – Table includes operations with profile-specific requirements. Other operations may be implemented.</p> | <p><b>Deprecated</b> with version 1.0.1; replaced by option 2, with additional requirements specified in 10.4.8.3.3.</p> <p>"Support for operations for each profile class (including associations) is specified in the following subclauses. Each of these subclauses includes either</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a statement "All operations from the default list specified in section nnn are supported as described by DSPXXXX vX.y.z" where nnn is the number of the section containing the default list.</li> <li>• a table listing all the operations that are not constrained by this profile or where the profile requires behavior other than described by DSPXXX.</li> </ul> <p>The default list of operations is operation-1, operation-2, ... Profile requirements for these operations are specified in the "Requirements" column.</p> |

4682 The default list of intrinsic operations for ordinary classes typically lists the intrinsic operations related to  
 4683 manipulation of instances and possibly intrinsic operations to execute queries.

4684 **10.4.8.3.3 Requirements for the specification of class-specific operations subclauses**

4685 A subclause shall be included for each class adaptation (including association adaptations) defined by the  
 4686 subject profile.

4687 Subsequent definitions in this subclause make use of the following ABNF rules:

- 4688 • TableNum is the number of the table.
- 4689 • OpSpec is a reference to the operations specification.
- 4690 • PcoNum is the subclause number of the "Profile conventions for operations" subclause.

4691 If a default list of operations was specified, and the profile does not require modifications on that default  
 4692 list, the following statement (including the NOTE) shall be provided:

4693 "All operations in the default list in " PCONum " shall be implemented as  
 4694 defined in " OpSpec "."

4695 "NOTE Related profiles may define additional requirements on operations for the  
 4696 profile class."

4697 If a default list of operations was specified, and the profile requires modifications on that default list, the  
 4698 modification shall be stated in a separate table, and the following statement (including the NOTE) shall be  
 4699 provided:

4700 "Table " TabNum " lists implementation requirements for operations. If  
 4701 implemented, these operations shall be implemented as defined in " OpSpec  
 4702 ". In addition, and unless otherwise stated in Table " TabNum ", all  
 4703 operations in the default list in " PCONum " shall be implemented as  
 4704 defined in " OpSpec "."

4705 "NOTE Related profiles may define additional requirements on operations for the  
 4706 profile class."



4707 NOTE The quotation, the indentation and the use of a monospaced font are elements of the ABNF rule and are  
 4708 not part of the normative definition. Instead, the presented text is intended to be part of the normal text of  
 4709 the subject profile.

4710 If a table is provided detailing requirements for operations, the table shall have the format as defined in  
 4711 10.4.7.4.7.

4712 For operations related to associations the requirements defined in 10.4.7.4.8 apply correspondingly for  
 4713 "profile classes".

4714 **DEPRECATED**

---

## 4715 **10.4.9 Requirements for the specification of the "Use cases" clause**

4716 This subclause details requirements for the "Use cases" clause in profile specifications.

### 4717 **10.4.9.1 General**

4718 Each profile specification shall have a "Use cases" clause.

4719 Within the "Use cases" clause, each use case defined by the profile (see 7.16) shall be documented in a  
 4720 separate subclause, as detailed in 10.4.9.3.

4721 State descriptions (see 7.16.2) may be documented as part of a use case, or may be documented in a  
 4722 separate subclause of a "Use cases" clause that is referenced from within use case specific subclauses.

### 4723 **10.4.9.2 Requirements for the specification of subclauses containing state descriptions**

4724 A profile specification may contain zero or more subclauses with state descriptions depicting typical  
 4725 situations that a client may observe in the process of applying use cases defined by the profile. Each  
 4726 state description-specific subclause shall contain one state description.

4727 All or part of a state description may be provided in graphical form as DMTF object diagrams; in this case,  
 4728 the rules defined in 8.3.7 apply.

4729 The title of state description subclauses shall be formatted as follows:

```
4730     StateDescriptionSubclauseTitle = [ "StateDescription *WSP ":" *WSP ]
4731     StateDescriptionName [ *WSP ":" *WSP StateDescriptionTitle ]
```

4732 `StateDescriptionName` shall state the name of the state description. The name shall comply with the  
 4733 rules for names of named profile elements (see 7.2.2), and should be chosen such that it enables a  
 4734 human reader to grasp the situation detailed by the state description; the name shall be unique within the  
 4735 profile specification. `StateDescriptionTitle` may state a phrase that further details the purpose of  
 4736 the state description in situations where `StateDescriptionName` does not suffice.

4737 A brief description of the object diagram should be provided, with particular attention on the managed  
 4738 objects in the managed environment and their relationships that are represented by the CIM instances  
 4739 depicted in the object diagram.

### 4740 **10.4.9.3 Requirements for the specification of use-case-specific subclauses**

#### 4741 **10.4.9.3.1 General**

4742 Each use case shall be specified in a separate subclause of the "Use cases" clause of a profile  
 4743 specification.

4744 The title of use case-specific subclauses shall be formatted as follows:

4745            `UseCaseSubclauseTitle = UseCaseName [ *WSP ":" *WSP UseCaseTitle ]`

4746    `UseCaseName` shall state a name for the use case. The name shall comply with the rules for names of  
4747 named profile elements (see 7.2.2), and should be chosen such that it enables a human reader to grasp  
4748 the intent of the use case; the name shall be unique within the profile. `UseCaseTitle` may state a  
4749 phrase that captures the purpose of the use case in situations where `UseCaseName` does not suffice.

4750    Each use case-specific subclause should contain a brief description of the use case.

4751    See A.5 for examples of use cases.

#### 4752    **10.4.9.3.2 Requirements for the specification of preconditions in use cases**

4753    The definition of preconditions as required by 7.16.3 shall be provided within a first subclause within any  
4754 the use case-specific subclause. The precondition subclause shall be titled "Preconditions".

4755    Sequences of statements expressing elements of preconditions should be organized in a list format.

#### 4756    **10.4.9.3.3 Requirements for the specification of flows of activities in use cases**

4757    The description of flows of activities as required by 7.16.4 shall be provided in a separate subclause  
4758 within any use case-specific subclause. The subclause shall be titled "Flow of activities".

4759    The following formal requirements apply:

- 4760            • Use case steps should be numbered. Numbering is required if use case steps are referenced.
- 4761            • Descriptions may contain references to DMTF object diagrams.
- 4762            • Normative requirements shall not be duplicated in use case descriptions.
- 4763            • Parameter values should be stated in a list format where each list entry describes one  
4764 parameter and its value. If a parameter value is an embedded CIM instance, a list format should  
4765 be used to state names and values of required or applicable properties. Descriptions of  
4766 parameters or properties should provide an interpretation of their use in the management  
4767 domain.
- 4768            • The inspection of method results and return parameters may be described either as part of a  
4769 use case step after the description of a method invocation, or as separate use case steps.
- 4770            • The flow of activities should be the sequential processing of use case steps; however, the  
4771 following phrases may be used to indicate special situations:
  - 4772            – `StepPostCondition "; the use case continues with step" StepNumber`  
4773 `". "`  
4774            where `StepPostCondition` details a simple post condition of the use case step such as  
4775 a return value and its significance. If more than one next step is possible, each step should  
4776 be listed together with the respective post condition.
  - 4777            – `"This completes the use case; the postconditions in"`  
4778 `SubclauseNumber "apply."`  
4779            This phrase describes a normal completion of the use case. Within the description of one  
4780 use case at least one step should end with a normal completion of the use case.
  - 4781            – `"This terminates the use case; the postconditions in"`  
4782 `SubclauseNumber "apply."`  
4783            This phrase describes an abnormal termination of the use case. Within the description of  
4784 one use case zero or more steps can end with an abnormal termination of the use case.

4785 Alternatively to the format defined above, use cases may be presented as pseudo-code.

#### 4786 **10.4.9.3.4 Requirements for the specification of postconditions in use cases**

4787 The definition of a postcondition as required by 7.16.5 shall be provided in a separate subclause within  
4788 the use case-specific subclause that is titled "Postconditions".

4789 Postcondition subclauses may be further subdivided into subclauses, addressing various situations  
4790 resulting from processing the use case such as success or failure. Such situations may likewise be  
4791 presented by other structuring elements such as lists; however, separate subclauses are required if the  
4792 content is referenced elsewhere.

### 4793 **DEPRECATED**

4794 Profile specifications that apply the condensed profile specification structure (see 10.3.2) shall not contain  
4795 a "CIM elements" clause because in this case the definition of CIM elements is replaced by the definition  
4796 of class adaptations within the "Implementation" clause (see 10.4.7.4), and the list of class adaptations is  
4797 provided as part of the "Synopsis" clause (see 10.4.5).

#### 4798 **10.4.10 Requirements for the specification of the "CIM elements" clause**

4799 This subclause details requirements for the "CIM elements" clause in profile specifications.

##### 4800 **10.4.10.1 General**

4801 Each profile specification that applies the traditional profile specification structure (see 10.3.3) shall  
4802 contain a "CIM elements" clause.

4803 Version 1.0 of this guide did not formally define the concept of adaptations; instead it informally used the  
4804 terms "class", "profile class", "profiled class", or "supported class". For details, see 7.13.1.

4805 Revisions of existing profile specifications that apply version 1.1 or a later version of this guide should  
4806 start using the term adaptation in modified text passages; however, it is not required to modify otherwise  
4807 unmodified text solely for the introduction of these new terms. The use of these terms in this guide shall  
4808 apply correspondingly to entities such as "class", "profile class", or "supported class" as used by profiles  
4809 written conformant to version 1.0 of this guide.

4810 If the subject profile is a derived profile that does not add specifications for "CIM elements" beyond those  
4811 defined in its base profile(s), the "CIM elements" clause shall contain the statement: "All CIM elements  
4812 are defined in base profile(s)."

4813 NOTE Typical examples of derived profiles not adding specifications for CIM elements are those derived from an  
4814 abstract profile for the sole purpose of providing a base for an implementation. Recall that abstract profiles  
4815 must not be implemented directly.

4816 The "CIM elements" clause shall contain the following subclauses:

- 4817 • An initial "Overview" subclause; see 10.4.10.2.
- 4818 • A subclause for each adaptation defined by the profile; see 10.4.10.3.

##### 4819 **10.4.10.2 Requirements for the specification of the "Overview" subclause**

4820 This subclause details requirements for the "Overview" subclause of the "CIM elements" clause.

4821 The "Overview" subclause shall contain a table listing the adaptations defined by the profile (including  
4822 association adaptations and indication adaptations). The table shall be labeled:

4823 `CIMElementTableTitle = ProfileName "profile : CIM elements"`

4824 `ProfileName` shall be the registered name of the profile. Each entry in the table shall declare an  
 4825 adaptation defined by the subject profile.

4826 The table shall have four columns:

**AdaptationName** – Cell values shall state the name of the adaptation; see 7.13.

**Elements** – Cells may be split into subcells, as follows:

- The first subcell shall contain the name of the adapted class.
- If base adaptations are defined, these shall be stated in subsequent subcells, using the following ABNF defined format:

```
AdaptationReference = ProfileName ":@" AdaptationName
```

The value of `ProfileName` shall be the registered name (see 7.6.2) of the referenced profile that defines the referenced adaptation, and the value of `AdaptationName` shall be the name of the referenced adaptation, as defined by its defining profile.

- If a standard message is defined for an indication adaptation, that message shall be stated in a subsequent subcell.

**Requirement** – Cell values shall state the requirement level for the adaptation, as defined in 10.2.1.

The following rules apply:

- If an adaptation is based on other adaptations and different requirement levels apply, these shall be specified in separate subcells in this column; however, within the scope of a cell in the "Adaptation" column, if all corresponding cells in the "Elements" column are required with the same requirement level, the respective subcells in the "Requirement" column may be collapsed into one cell containing the common requirement level.

**Description** – Cell values shall contain a description of the adaptation.

The following rules apply:

- If the requirement level is "conditional", and unless the condition is already stated in the "Requirement" column, the condition shall be stated here, as detailed in 10.2.3.
- A textual description shall be provided that describes the purpose of the adaptation. The description should describe the managed object type that is modeled by the adaptation, unless that is already addressed with sufficient precision by the schema descriptions of the adapted class.
- For trivial class adaptations defined by the subject profile that do not specify additional requirements beyond those defined in the schema definition of the adapted class, that shall be indicated by the following statement:

```
"See CIM schema definition."
```

- If the corresponding cell in the "Elements" column is split into subcells, the cell in the "Description" column shall be split into respective subcells, unless the description applies in all cases, in which case respective subcells in the "Description" column may be collapsed into one cell containing the common description.
- If the value in any "Description" subcell exceeds 20 words, a separate adaptation definition subclause shall be provided within the "Implementation" clause; for details, see 10.4.7.4.3. In this case, the description shall be provided as part of the adaptation definition subclause, and the adaptation definition subclause shall be referenced from the cell, as follows:

```
"See" AdaptationSubclauseNumber "."
```

`AdaptationSubclauseNumber` is the number of the subclause of the "Implementation" clause that contains the definition of the adaptation.

#### 4827 **10.4.10.3 Requirements for the specification of subclauses defining class adaptations**

4828 The specification of the each class adaptation subclause shall be in compliance with 10.4.7.4, with the  
 4829 following admissible deviations:

- The title of the subclause may apply the deprecated naming convention using the name of the adapted class and a modifier; for details see 7.13.

4832 **DEPRECATED**

---

**Annex A  
(Informative)**

**Examples**

4833  
4834  
4835  
4836

**4837 A.1 General**

4838 All the examples provided within Annex A provide excerpts from a hypothetical Example Fan profile. The  
4839 examples are related to each other, but together they would not form a complete profile specification.

**4840 A.2 Example of a "Synopsis" clause**

4841 Table A-1 provides an example of a "Synopsis" clause; see 10.4.5 for requirements on the specification of  
4842 the "Synopsis" clause.

4843 **Table A-1 – Example of "Synopsis" clause**

| <b>X-5 Synopsis</b>   |              |              |         |              |  |
|---|--------------|--------------|---------|--------------|--|
| <b>X-5.1 Profile attributes</b>   |              |              |         |              |  |
| <b>Profile name:</b> Example Fan  |              |              |         |              |  |
| <b>Version:</b> 1.1.0   |              |              |         |              |  |
| <b>Organization:</b> DMTF   |              |              |         |              |  |
| <b>Schema version:</b> 2.24   |              |              |         |              |  |
| <b>Profile type:</b> Component  |              |              |         |              |  |
| <b>Central class adaptation:</b> Fan  |              |              |         |              |  |
| <b>Scoping class adaptation:</b> ComputerSystem   |              |              |         |              |  |
| <b>Scoping algorithm:</b> FanInSystem   |              |              |         |              |  |
| <b>X-5.2 Summary</b>  |              |              |         |              |  |
| The Example Fan profile extends the management capability of a scoping profile by adding the capability to describe fans and redundant fans within managed systems. |              |              |         |              |  |
| <b>X-5.3 Profile references</b>   |              |              |         |              |  |
| Table X-1 lists the profile references defined in this profile.   |              |              |         |              |  |
| <b>Table X-1 – Profile references</b>   |              |              |         |              |  |
| Profile reference name  | Profile name | Organization | Version | Relationship | Description  |
| Indications   | Indications  | DMTF         | 1.2     | Conditional  | The profile defining the creation and delivery of indications.<br>Condition: The Indications |

|                        |                              |      |     |             |   |
|------------------------|------------------------------|------|-----|-------------|---|
|                        |                              |      |     |             | feature is implemented; see <b>X-7.2.1</b> for feature definition.  |
| FanProfileRegistration | Example Profile Registration | DMTF | 1.1 | Mandatory   | The Example Profile Registration profile applied for the registration of implementations of the Example Fan profile.                                      |
| FanPhysicalAsset       | Example Physical Asset       | DMTF | 1.1 | Optional    | The Example Physical Asset profile applied for fans as physical assets.   |
| FanSensors             | Example Sensors              | DMTF | 1.1 | Conditional | The Example Sensors profile applied for sensors of fans.<br>Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; see X-7.2.4 for the feature definition. |

**X-5.4 Referenced registries**

Table X-2 lists the message registry references defined by this profile.

**Table X-2 – Message registry references**

| Registry reference name | Registry name                    | Organization | Version | Description  |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------|---------|--------------|
| WBEMMREG                | WBEM Operations Message Registry | DMTF         | 1.0     | See DSP8016. |
| PLATMREG                | Platform Alert Message Registry  | DMTF         | 1.1     | See DSP8007. |

**X-5.5 Features**

Table X-3 lists the features defined in this profile.

**Table X-3 – Features**

| Feature name               | Granularity  | Requirement | Description                                |
|----------------------------|--------------|-------------|--|
| Indications                | Profile      | Optional    | See <b>X-7.2.1</b> for feature definition. |
| FanStateManagement         | Fan instance | Optional    | See X-7.2.2 for feature definition.        |
| FanElementNameModification | Fan instance | Optional    | (Not detailed in this example)             |
| FanSpeedSensor             | Fan instance | Conditional | See X-7.2.4 for feature definition.        |
| FanLifecycleAlerts         | Profile      | Conditional | See X-7.2.5 for feature definition.        |

**X-5.7 Adaptations**

Table X-4 lists the class adaptations defined in this profile.

**Table X-4 – Adaptations**

| Adaptation   | Elements                              | Requirement | Description  |
|--|---------------------------------------|-------------|--|
| <b>Instantiated, embedded and abstract adaptations</b> |                                       |             |  |
| Fan  | CIM_Fan                               | Mandatory   | See X-7.4.3.   |
| FanInSystem  | CIM_SystemDevice                      | Mandatory   | See X-7.4.4.   |
| FanCapabilities  | CIM_EnabledLogicalElementCapabilities | Conditional | See X-7.4.5.   |
| CapabilitiesOfFan                                      | CIM_ElementCapabilities               | Conditional | See X-7.4.6.   |
| CooledElement  | CIM_ManagedElement                    | Mandatory   | See ...  |
| ...  | ...                                   | ...         | ...  |
| FanSensor  | CIM_Sensor                            | Conditional | See X-7.4.7.   |
| FanNumericSensor                                       | CIM_NumericSensor                     | Conditional | See X-7.4.8.   |
| SensorOfFan  | CIM_AssociatedSensor                  | Conditional | See X-7.4.9.   |
| ...  | ...                                   | ...         | ...  |
| FanProfileRegistration                                 | CIM_RegisteredProfile                 | Mandatory   | See ...  |
| ...  | ...                                   | ...         | ...  |
| FanSystem  | CIM_System                            | Mandatory   | Instantiated ordinary adaptation; scoping class adaptation; scoping profiles base their central class adaptation on this adaptation. |
| ...  | ...                                   | ...         | ...  |
| <b>Indications and exceptions</b>                      |                                       |             |  |
| FanAddedAlert  | CIM_AlertIndication                   | Conditional | See X-7.4.34.  |
| FanRemovedAlert  | CIM_AlertIndication                   | Conditional | See X-7.4.35.  |
| FanFailedAlert   | CIM_AlertIndication                   | Optional    | See X-7.4.36.  |
| FanReturned-ToOKAlert                                  | CIM_AlertIndication                   | Optional    | See X-7.4.37.  |
| FanDegradedAlert                                       | CIM_AlertIndication                   | Optional    | See X-7.4.38.  |
| <br><b>X-5.8 Use cases</b>                             |                                       |             |  |
| Table X-6 lists the use cases defined in this profile. |                                       |             |  |
| <b>Table X-6 – Use cases</b>                           |                                       |             |  |
| Use-case name  | Description                           |             |  |
| ...  | ...                                   |             |  |
| DetermineFanState                                      | See X-8.3.                            |             |  |
| ...  | ...                                   |             |  |
| RequestFanStateChange                                  | See X-8.7.                            |             |  |
| ...  | ...                                   |             |  |



4844 **A.3 Example of a "Description" clause**

4845 Table A-2 shows an example of the "Description" clause for an Example Fan profile.

Table A-2 – Example of a "Description" clause

|   |
|---|
| <p><b>X-6 Description</b></p> <p><b>X-6.1 General</b></p> <p>The Example Fan profile addresses the management domain of representing and managing fans in managed systems, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the representation of the relationship between fans and the elements that are provided cooling by the fan</li> <li>• the representation of sensors measuring the revolution speed of fans</li> <li>• fan state management</li> </ul> <p><b>X-6.1 Fan</b></p> <p>A fan is a device within a system that provides active cooling to specific elements of a system, and/or to the system as a whole.</p> <p>For the management domain addressed by this profile, a fan is considered to be either active or inactive; any other potentially possible state needs to be mappable.</p> <p><b>X-6.2 System</b></p> <p>A system is an entity made up of components that operates as a 'functional whole'. A system can contain elements that require cooling, such as processors, chipsets, disks or power supplies. Each of these elements may require cooling by means of dedicated fans, and/or may depend on cooling provided to the system as a whole.</p> <p><b>X-6.3 Cooled element</b></p> <p>Cooled elements are elements contained by a system that require cooling.</p> <p><b>X-6.4 Temperature sensor</b></p> <p>A temperate sensor measures either the temperature of the system as a whole, or that of individual cooled elements within a system.</p> <p><b>X-6.5 Fan speed sensors</b></p> <p>Fans speed sensors allow monitoring the rotation speed of fans.</p> <p>...</p> <p><b>X-6.10 CIM model overview</b></p> <p>Figure &lt;Fig1&gt; represents the DMTF collaboration structure diagram the Example Fan profile.</p> <p>NOTE Here one or more DMTF collaboration diagrams and/or DMTF adaptation diagrams would be placed. For examples, see Figure 8 on page 78.</p> <p>The FanSystem adaptation (see X-6.2) models systems (see X-6.2).</p> <p>The Fan adaptation (see X-7.4.3) models fans (see X-6.1).</p> <p>...</p> |
|---|

4847 **A.4 Example of an "Implementation" clause**

4848 **A.4.1 Example of the general layout of an "Implementation" clause**

4849 Table A-3 shows an example of the general layout of the "Implementation" clause; see 10.4.7 for  
 4850 requirements on the specification of the "Implementation" clause.

4851 **Table A-3 – Overview example of an "Implementation" clause**

|  |
|--|
| <p><b>X-7 Implementation</b></p> <p><b>X-7.1 General</b></p> <p>...</p> <p>// general implementation requirements</p> <p>...</p> <p><b>X-7.2 Features</b></p> <p>// See A.4.2 for example definitions of features.</p> <p>...</p> <p><b>X-7.4 Adaptations</b></p> <p>// See A.4.3 for an example of the "General requirements" subclause.</p> <p>// See A.4.4 for examples of subclauses defining adaptations of ordinary classes and associations.</p> <p>...</p> |
|--|

4852 **A.4.2 Example of feature definitions**

4853 Table A-4 shows examples of feature definitions within the "Features" subclause of the "Implementation"  
 4854 subclause; see 7.15 for requirements on the specification of features.

4855 **Table A-4 – Example definitions of features**

|  |
|--|
| <p><b>X-7.2.1 Feature: Indications</b></p> <p><b>X-7.2.1.1 General</b></p> <p>The implementation of the Indications feature is conditional.</p> <p>Condition: Any of the following is true:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The FanLifecycleAlertsFeature is implemented; see <b>X-7.2.5</b>.</li> <li>• The FanFailedAlert indication adaptation is implemented; see <b>X-7.4.36</b>.</li> <li>• The FanReturnedToOK indication adaptation is implemented; see <b>X-7.4.37</b>.</li> <li>• The FanFailedAlert indication adaptation is implemented; see <b>X-7.4.38</b>.</li> </ul> <p><b>X-7.2.1.2 Feature description</b></p> <p>The implementation of the Indications feature provides for indications being generated and delivered to</p> |
|--|

subscribed listeners as the events modeled by these indications occur.

#### **X-7.2.1.3 Feature discovery**

The presence of the Indications feature is indicated by the exposure of an `Indications::IndicationsProfileRegistration` instance (see DSP1054) that is related to the `FanProfileRegistration` instance (see ...) with a `ReferencedProfile` association instance (see ...).

#### **X-7.2.2 Feature: FanStateManagement**

##### **X-7.2.1.1 General**

The implementation of the `FanStateManagement` feature is conditional.

Condition: The managed environment includes fans that are state manageable.

##### **X-7.2.1.2 Feature description**

The implementation of the `FanStateManagement` feature enables clients to request state changes on fans, such as activation or deactivation.

##### **X-7.2.1.3 Feature discovery**

The presence of the `FanStateManagement` feature for a particular `Fan` instance (see X-7.4.3) is indicated by the exposure of a `FanCapabilities` instance (see X-7.4.5) that is associated to the `Fan` instance through a `FanElementCapabilities` association instance (see X-7.4.6), and the value of the `RequestedStatesSupported[ ]` array property in the `FanCapabilities` instance is a non-empty list of values, each representing a supported requestable state for the fan.

##### **X-7.2.3 Feature: FanElementNameEdit**

[not detailed in this example]

...

##### **X-7.2.4 Feature: FanSpeedSensor**

The implementation of the `FanSpeedSensor` feature is conditional.

Condition: The managed environment includes fans with sensors.

##### **X-7.2.3.1 Feature description**

Fan speed sensing is the capability of a fan to provide information about its revolution speed. Fan speed sensor information may be reported as discrete values such as "Normal", or as analogous speed such as "1200" rpm.

##### **X-7.2.3.2 Feature discovery**

The presence of the `FanSpeedSensor` feature for a particular `Fan` instance (see X-7.4.3) is indicated by the exposure of a `FanSensor` instance (see X-7.4.7) that is associated to the `Fan` instance through a `SensorOfFan` instance (see X-7.4.9), and the `Sensors` profile is supported for the `FanSensor` instance.

...

##### **X-7.2.5 Feature: FanLifecycleAlerts**

The implementation of the `FanLifecycleAlerts` feature is optional.

The `FanLifecycleAlerts` feature groups the requirements for reporting fan lifecycle events such as the

addition of a fan to the managed environment, or the removal of a fan from the managed environment.

4856 **A.4.3 Example of the "Conventions" subclause**

4857 Table A-5 details an example of the "Conventions" subclause within the "Adaptations" subclause of the  
 4858 "Implementation" clause; see 10.4.7.4.2 for requirements on the specification of implementation  
 4859 requirements for operations.

4860 **Table A-5 – Example of the "Conventions" subclause**

**X-7.4.1 Conventions**

...

This profile repeats the effective values of certain Boolean qualifiers as part of property requirements, or of method parameter requirements. The following convention is established: If the name of a qualifier is listed, its effective value is True; if the qualifier name is not listed, its effective value is False. The convention is applied in the following cases:

- In: indicates that the parameter is an input parameter
- Out: indicates that the parameter is an output parameter
- Key: indicates that the property is a key (that is, its value is part of the instance part)
- Required: indicates that the element value shall be non-Null.

This profile defines operation requirements based on [DSP0223](#).

For adaptations of ordinary classes and of associations the requirements for operations are specified in adaptation-specific subclauses of X-7.4.

For association traversal operation requirements that are specified only in the elements table of an adaptation (i.e. without operation-specific subclauses), the names of the association adaptations to be traversed are listed in the elements table.

...

4861 **A.4.4 Examples of subclauses defining adaptations**

4862 Table A-6 details examples of subclauses within the "Adaptation" subclause of the "Implementation"  
 4863 clause that define adaptations of ordinary classes and associations; see 10.4.7.4 for requirements on the  
 4864 specification of class adaptations.

4865

Table A-6 – Examples of subclauses defining adaptations

| <p><b>X-7.4.3 Fan: CIM_Fan</b></p> <p><b>X-7.4.3.1 General</b></p> <p>The Fan adaptation models fans in systems; fans are described in X-6.1.</p> <p>The implementation type of the Fan adaptation is: "instantiated".</p> <p>The Fan adaptation shall conform to the requirements for central elements as defined by the Profile Registration profile (see <a href="#">DSP1033</a>).</p> <p>Table X8 lists the element requirements of the Fan adaptation.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Table X8 – Fan: Element requirements</b></p> |             |  |
|--|-------------|--|
| Element  | Requirement | Description  |
| <b>Base adaptations</b>  |             |  |
| ExampleSensors::SensoredElement  | Conditional | Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; see X-7.2.4.<br>See DSPxxxx.                         |
| <b>Properties</b>  |             |  |
| OperationalStatus[ ]   | Mandatory   | See CIM schema definition.   |
| HealthState  | Mandatory   | See CIM schema definition.   |
| VariableSpeed  | Mandatory   | See CIM schema definition.   |
| DesiredSpeed   | Conditional | Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; see X-7.2.4.<br>See CIM schema definition.           |
| ActiveCooling  | Mandatory   | Value shall be True  |
| EnabledState   | Mandatory   | See X-7.4.3.3.   |
| RequestedState   | Conditional | Condition: The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.2.<br>See X-7.4.3.4.                   |
| ElementName  | Conditional | Condition: The FanElementNameManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.3.<br>See CIM schema definition. |
| <b>Methods</b>   |             |  |
| RequestStateChange( )  | Conditional | Condition: The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.2.<br>See X-7.4.3.5.                   |
| <b>Operations</b>  |             |  |
| GetInstance( )   | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| EnumerateInstances( )  | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| EnumerateInstanceNames( )  | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| Associators( )   | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| AssociatorNames( )   | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |

|                   |           |  |
|-------------------|-----------|--|
| References( )     | Mandatory | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .                |
| ReferenceNames( ) | Mandatory | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .                |
| ModifyInstance( ) | Optional  | See X-7.4.3.6, and <a href="#">DSP0223</a> . |

**X-7.4.3.2 Property: EnabledState**

The value of the EnabledState property shall convey the state of the represented fan. Admissible values are 2 (Enabled) and 3 (Disabled); all other values shall not be used. A value of 2 (Enabled) shall convey that the fan is activated and working; a value of 3 (Disable) shall convey that the fan is inactive.

**X-7.4.3.3 Property: RequestedState**

The value of the RequestedState property shall convey the most recently requested or desired state of the represented fan. Admissible values are 2 (Enabled) and 3 (Disabled); all other values shall not be used. A value of 2 (Enabled) shall convey that the fan is desired to be activated; a value of 3 (Disable) shall convey that the fan is desired to be inactive.

**X-7.4.3.4 Method: RequestStateChange( )**

**X-7.4.3.4.1 General**

The requirement level of the RequestStateChange( ) method is conditional.

Condition: The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.2.

The behavior of the method shall depend on the value of the RequestedState parameter; this is referred to as the *requested state* in this subclause. The Fan instance on that the method is invoked is referred to as the *target instance* in this subclause. The fan in the managed environment that is represented by the target instance is referred to as the *target fan* in this subclause.

The method semantics shall be as follows:

- The value of the RequestedState property in the target instance shall reflect the requested state.
- If the requested state is 2 (Enabled), the implementation shall execute an activation of the target fan.
- If the requested state is 3 (Disabled), the implementation shall execute a deactivation of the target fan.
- Any other requested state shall be rejected, issuing messages WBEMMREG::WIPG0227 and PLATMREG::PLATxxx1.
- Depending on the outcome of the operation executed by the implementation, the resulting state shall be reflected by the value of the EnabledState property.

Table X-9 lists the parameter requirements for the RequestStateChange( ) method.

**Table X-9 – RequestStateChange( ): Parameter requirements**

| Name           | Description            |
|----------------|------------------------|
| RequestedState | In, see X-7.4.3.4.2.   |
| TimeoutPeriod  | In, see X-7.4.3.4.3.   |
| Job            | Out, see X-7.4.3.4.4.  |
| ReturnValue    | See schema definition. |

**X-7.4.3.4.2 RequestedState**

A non-Null instance path shall be returned if a job was started; otherwise, Null shall be returned.

**X-7.4.3.4.3 TimeoutPeriod**

Client-specified maximum amount of time the transition to a new state is supposed to take:

- 0 or Null – No maximum time is specified
- Non-Null – The value specifies the maximum time allowed

Note that for the case that the value is Non-Null and not 0, and the implementation is unable to support the semantics of the TimeoutPeriod parameter, the schema definition of the adapted class requires that the value 4098 (Use of Timeout Parameter Not Supported) is returned.

**X-7.4.3.4.4 Job**

A ConcreteJob (see ...) instance path shall be returned if a job was started; otherwise, Null shall be returned.

**X-7.4.3.4.6 Error reporting requirements**

Table X-11 specifies the error reporting requirements for the RequestStateChange( ) method. These requirements apply on top of those required by [DSP0223](#) for the InvokeMethod( ) operation.

**Table X-11 – RequestStateChange( ): Error reporting requirements**

| Reporting mechanism                    | Requirement level | Description  |
|--|-------------------|--|
| WBEMMREG::WIPG0208, PLATMREG::PLAT9001 | Mandatory         | The requested state is not supported for the fan.  |
| WBEMMREG::WIPG0208, PLATMREG::PLAT9002 | Mandatory         | A non-Null value for the Timeout parameter is not supported.   |
| WBEMMREG::WIPG02019                    | Mandatory         | Method is not implemented.   |
| WBEMMREG::WIPG0227, PLATMREG::PLAT9003 | Mandatory         | Fan cannot be disabled due to excessive temperature. The detail text of WIPG0227 should be omitted or should indicate that the next message details the error. |
| WBEMMREG::WIPG0227                     | Mandatory         | Any other failure. As defined in WIPG0227, the failure shall be described in its detail text.  |
| CIM_ERR_SERVER_LIMITS_EXCEEDED         | Mandatory         | More element changes are under way than the configured limit of concurrent changes, or there is a resource shortage in the WBEM server.                        |

...

**X-7.4.3.5 Operation: ModifyInstance( )**

The implementation of the ModifyInstance( ) operation for the Fan adaptation is optional.

The behavior of the method shall depend on the Fan instance that is passed in as the value of the ModifiedInstance parameter; this is referred to as the *input instance* in this subclause. The value of the EnabledState property in the input instance is referred to as the *requested state* in this subclause. The key properties in the input instance shall be used to identify the Fan instance for which the modification



is requested; this instance is referred to as the *target instance* in this subclause. All other properties in the input instance shall be ignored. The fan in the managed environment that is represented by the target instance is referred to as the *target fan* in this subclause. Using these terms, the method semantics with respect to the requested state shall be identical to those defined for the RequestStateChange( ) method; see X-7.4.3.4.

This profile does not specify the implementation behavior regarding other properties of the input instance.

Table X-12 specifies the error reporting requirements of the ModifyInstance( ) method. These requirements apply on top of those required by [DSP0223](#) for the ModifyInstance( ) operation.

**Table X-12 – ModifyInstance( ): Error reporting requirements**

| Reporting mechanism                    | Requirement level | Description                                |
|--|-------------------|--|
| WBEMMREG::WIPG0227, PLATMREG::PLATxxx1 | Mandatory         | Operation not supported for the fan        |
| WBEMMREG::WIPG0227, PLATMREG::PLATxxx2 | Mandatory         | Temperature too high for disabling the fan |
| WBEMMREG::WIPG0227, PLATMREG::PLATxxx3 | Mandatory         | Insufficient power for enabling the fan    |

...

**X-7.4.4 Adaptation: FanInSystem: CIM\_SystemDevice**

The FanInSystem association adaptation models the relationship between fans and their containing system.

The implementation type of the FanInSystem adaptation is: "instantiated".

Each Fan (see X-7.4.3) instance shall be associated through a FanInSystem instance to the FanSystem (see ...) instance representing the system containing the fan.

Table X-13 lists the implementation requirements for the FanInSystem adaptation.

**Table X-13 – FanInSystem: Element requirements**

| Element                   | Requirement | Description   |
|---------------------------|-------------|---|
| <b>Properties</b>         |             |   |
| GroupComponent            | Mandatory   | <b>Key:</b> Value shall reference the System instance representing the system that contains the fan<br><b>Multiplicity:</b> 1 |
| PartComponent             | Mandatory   | <b>Key:</b> Value shall reference the Fan instance representing a fan<br><b>Multiplicity:</b> *                               |
| <b>Operations</b>         |             |   |
| GetInstance( )            | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .   |
| EnumerateInstances( )     | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .   |
| EnumerateInstanceNames( ) | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .   |

**X-7.4.5 Adaptation: FanCapabilities: CIM\_EnabledLogicalElementCapabilities**

The FanCapabilities adaptation models the capabilities of fans in managed systems.

The requirement level of the FanCapabilities adaptation is conditional.

Condition: One or more of the following conditions:

- The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; for feature definition see X-7.2.2.
- The FanElementNameEdit feature is implemented; for feature definition see X-7.2.3.

The implementation type of the FanCapabilities adaptation is: "instantiated".

For each fan supporting the FanStateManagement feature or the FanElementNameEdit feature the capabilities of that fan shall be represented by a FanCapabilities instance.

Table X-14 lists the element requirements for this class adaptation.

**Table X-14 – FanCapabilities: Element requirements**

| Element                     | Requirement | Description  |
|-----------------------------|-------------|--|
| <b>Properties</b>           |             |  |
| RequestedStatesSupported[ ] | Conditional | Condition: The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.2.<br>See CIM schema definition.   |
| ElementNameEditSupported    | Conditional | Condition: The ElementNameEdit feature is implemented; see X-7.2.3. If the ElementNameEdit feature is supported, the value shall be True, otherwise False. |
| MaxElementNameLen           | Conditional | Condition: The ElementNameEditSupported property is implemented.<br>See CIM schema definition.   |
| <b>Operations</b>           |             |  |
| GetInstance( )              | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| EnumerateInstances( )       | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| EnumerateInstanceNames( )   | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| Associators( )              | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| AssociatorNames( )          | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| References( )               | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| ReferenceNames( )           | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |

**X-7.4.6 Adaptation: CapabilitiesOfFan: CIM\_ElementCapabilities**

The CapabilitiesOfFan adaptation models the relationship between a fan and its capabilities.

The requirement level of the CapabilitiesOfFan adaptation is conditional.

Condition: The FanCapabilities adaptation is implemented; see X-7.4.5.

The implementation type of the CapabilitiesOfFan adaptation is: "instantiated".

Each FanCapabilities (see X-7.4.5) instance shall be associated through a CapabilitiesOfFan instance to the Fan (see X-7.4.3) instance for which it represents capabilities.

Table X-15 lists the element requirements for this association adaptation.

**Table X-15 – CapabilitiesOfFan: Element requirements**

| Element                   | Requirement | Description  |
|---------------------------|-------------|--|
| <b>Properties</b>         |             |  |
| ManagedElement            | Mandatory   | <b>Key:</b> Value shall reference the Fan instance representing a fan<br><b>Multiplicity:</b> 1..*                                       |
| Capabilities              | Mandatory   | <b>Key:</b> Value shall reference the CIM_EnabledLogicalElement instance representing the fans capabilities<br><b>Multiplicity:</b> 0..1 |
| <b>Operations</b>         |             |  |
| GetInstance( )            | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| EnumerateInstances( )     | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| EnumerateInstanceNames( ) | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |

**X-7.4.7 Adaptation: FanSensor: CIM\_Sensor**

The FanSensor adaptation models fans with discrete speed sensors.

The requirement level of the FanSensor adaptation is conditional.

Condition: All of the following:

- The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented (see X-7.2.4).
- Fan speed sensors within the managed environment support reporting discrete speed.

The implementation type of the FanSensor adaptation is: "instantiated".

Fan speed sensors within the managed environment that support reporting discrete speed may be represented by FanSensor instances.

Table X-16 lists the element requirements for this class adaptation.

**Table X-16 – FanSensor: Element requirements**

| Element                   | Requirement | Description                    |
|---------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>Base adaptations</b>   |             |                                |
| FanSensors::Sensor        | Mandatory   | See DSPxxxx.                   |
| <b>Properties</b>         |             |                                |
| SensorType                | Mandatory   | Value shall be 5 (Tachometer). |
| <b>Operations</b>         |             |                                |
| GetInstance( )            | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| EnumerateInstances( )     | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| EnumerateInstanceNames( ) | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| Associators( )            | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| AssociatorNames( )        | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| References( )             | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| ReferenceNames( )         | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |

**X-7.4.8 Adaptation: FanNumericSensor: CIM\_NumericSensor**

The FanNumericSensor adaptation models fan speed sensors that report analogous speed.

The requirement level of the FanNumericSensor adaptation is conditional.

Condition: All of the following:

- The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; see X-7.2.4.
- Fan speed sensors within the managed environment support reporting analogous speed.

The implementation type of the FanNumericSensor adaptation is: "instantiated".

Table X-17 lists the element requirements for this class adaptation.

**Table X-17 – FanNumericSensor: Element requirements**

| Elements                  | Requirement | Notes                         |
|---------------------------|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>Base adaptations</b>   |             |                               |
| FanSensors::NumericSensor | Mandatory   | See DSPxxxx.                  |
| <b>Properties</b>         |             |                               |
| SensorType                | Mandatory   | Value shall be 5 (Tachometer) |
| BaseUnits                 | Mandatory   | Value shall be 19 (RPM)       |
| RateUnits                 | Mandatory   | Value shall be 0 (None)       |
| <b>Operations</b>         |             |                               |
| GetInstance( )            | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> . |
| EnumerateInstances( )     | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> . |
| EnumerateInstanceNames( ) | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> . |
| Associators( )            | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> . |
| AssociatorNames( )        | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> . |
| References( )             | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> . |
| ReferenceNames( )         | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> . |

**X-7.4.9 Adaptation: SensorOfFan: CIM\_AssociatedSensor**

The SensorOfFan adaptation models the relationship between fans and their sensors.

The requirement level of the SensorOfFan adaptation is conditional.

Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; for feature definition see X-7.2.4.

The implementation type of the SensorOfFan adaptation is: "instantiated".

Each FanSensor (see X-7.4.7) or FanNumericSensor (see X-7.4.8) instance shall be associated through a SensorOfFan instance to the Fan instance representing the monitored fan.

Table X-18 lists the element requirements for this association adaptation.

| Table X-18 – SensorOfFan: Element requirements |             |  |
|--|-------------|--|
| Element  | Requirement | Description  |
| <b>Base adaptations</b>                        |             |  |
| ExampleSensors::AssociatedSensor               | Mandatory   | See DSPxxxx.   |
| <b>Properties</b>                              |             |  |
| Antecedent                                     | Mandatory   | <b>Key:</b> Value shall reference the FanSensor (see X-7.4.7) instance or the FanNumericSensor (see X-7.4.8) instance representing the sensor attached to the fan.<br><b>Multiplicity:</b> 1 |
| Dependent                                      | Mandatory   | <b>Key:</b> Value shall reference the Fan instance representing a fan<br><b>Multiplicity:</b> *  |
| <b>Operations</b>                              |             |  |
| GetInstance( )                                 | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| EnumerateInstances( )                          | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| EnumerateInstanceNames( )                      | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP0223</a> .  |
| ...  |             |  |

4866

4867 **A.4.5 Examples of subclauses defining indication adaptations**

4868 Table A-7 details examples of subclauses within the "Adaptation" subclause of the "Implementation"  
 4869 clause that define specific adaptations of indications.

4870

**Table A-7 – Examples of subclauses defining specific indication adaptations**

**X-7.4.34 Adaptation: FanAddedAlert: CIM\_AlertIndication**

The FanAddedAlert indication reports the event that a fan was added to a computer system; for details, see the definition of message PLATMREG::PLAT0456.

The requirement level of the FanAddedAlert indication adaptation is conditional.

The implementation type of the FanAddedAlert adaptation is: "indication".

Condition: The FanLifecycleAlerts feature is implemented; see X-7.2.5.

Table X-45 lists the element requirements for this indication adaptation.

**Table X-45 – FanAddedAlert: Element requirements**

| Element                      | Requirement | Description  |
|------------------------------|-------------|--|
| <b>Base adaptations</b>      |             |  |
| Indications::AlertIndication | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP1054</a> .  |
| <b>Alert messages</b>        |             |  |
| PLATMREG::PLAT0456           | Mandatory   | See DSP8007.   |
| <b>Properties</b>            |             |  |
| AlertingManagedElement       | Mandatory   | Value shall reference the Fan instance representing the added fan.   |
| MessageID                    | Mandatory   | Value shall match "PLAT0456".  |
| OwningEntity                 | Mandatory   | Value shall be "DMTF".   |
| MessageArguments[0]          | Mandatory   | Value shall be identical to the value of the ElementName property in the Fan instance representing the added fan; see X-7.4.3. |
| MessageArguments[1]          | Mandatory   | Value shall be in WBEM URI format and refer to the CIM_ComputerSystem instance representing the scoping computer system.       |

**X-7.4.35 Adaptation: FanRemovedAlert: CIM\_AlertIndication**

The FanRemovedAlert indication reports the event that a fan was removed from a computer system; for details, see the definition of message PLATMREG::PLAT0457.

The requirement level of the FanRemovedAlert indication adaptation is conditional.

Condition: The FanLifecycleAlerts feature is implemented; see X-7.2.5.

The implementation type of the FanRemovedAlert adaptation is: "indication".

Table X-46 lists the element requirements for this indication adaptation.

**Table X-46 – FanRemovedAlert: Element requirements**

| Element                      | Requirement | Description                   |
|------------------------------|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>Base adaptations</b>      |             |                               |
| Indications::AlertIndication | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP1054</a> . |

|                        |           |  |
|------------------------|-----------|--|
| <b>Alert messages</b>  |           |  |
| PLATMREG::PLAT0457     | Mandatory | See DSP8007.   |
| <b>Properties</b>      |           |  |
| AlertingManagedElement | Mandatory | Value shall reference the Fan instance that represented the removed fan.   |
| MessageID              | Mandatory | Value shall match "PLAT0457".  |
| OwningEntity           | Mandatory | Value shall be "DMTF".   |
| MessageArguments[0]    | Mandatory | Value shall be identical to the value of the ElementName property in the Fan instance that represented the removed fan; see X-7.4.3.<br>NOTE: The Fan instance no longer exists. |
| MessageArguments[1]    | Mandatory | Value shall be in WBEM URI format and refer to the CIM_ComputerSystem instance representing the scoping computer system.   |

**X-7.4.36 Adaptation: FanFailedAlert: CIM\_AlertIndication**

The FanFailedAlert indication reports the event that a fan within a computer system failed; for details, see the definition of message PLATMREG::PLAT0458.

The requirement level of the FanFailedAlert indication adaptation is optional.

The implementation type of the FanFailedAlert adaptation is: "indication".

Table X-47 lists the element requirements for this indication adaptation.

**Table X-47 – FanFailedAlert: Element requirements**

| Element                      | Requirement | Description   |
|------------------------------|-------------|---|
| <b>Base adaptations</b>      |             |   |
| Indications::AlertIndication | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP1054</a> .   |
| <b>Alert messages</b>        |             |   |
| PLATMREG::PLAT0458           | Mandatory   | See DSP8007.  |
| <b>Properties</b>            |             |   |
| AlertingManagedElement       | Mandatory   | Value shall reference the Fan instance representing the failed fan.   |
| MessageID                    | Mandatory   | Value shall match "PLAT0458".   |
| OwningEntity                 | Mandatory   | Value shall be "DMTF".  |
| MessageArguments[0]          | Mandatory   | Value shall be identical to the value of the ElementName property in the Fan instance representing the failed fan; see X-7.4.3. |
| MessageArguments[1]          | Mandatory   | Value shall be in WBEM URI format and refer to the CIM_ComputerSystem instance representing the scoping computer system.        |

**X-7.4.37 Adaptation: FanReturnedToOKAlert: CIM\_AlertIndication**

The FanReturnedToOKAlert indication reports the event that a fan within a computer system returns to

normal operation mode; for details, see the definition of message PLATMREG::PLAT0459.

The requirement level of the FanReturnedToOKAlert indication adaptation is optional.

The implementation type of the FanReturnedToOKAlert adaptation is: "indication".

Table X-48 lists the element requirements for this indication adaptation.

**Table X-48 – FanReturnedToOKAlert: Element requirements**

| Element                      | Requirement | Description   |
|------------------------------|-------------|---|
| <b>Base adaptations</b>      |             |   |
| Indications::AlertIndication | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP1054</a> .   |
| <b>Alert messages</b>        |             |   |
| PLATMREG::PLAT0459           | Mandatory   | See DSP8007.  |
| <b>Properties</b>            |             |   |
| AlertingManagedElement       | Mandatory   | Value shall reference the Fan instance representing the fan that returned to normal operational state.  |
| MessageID                    | Mandatory   | Value shall match "PLAT0459".   |
| OwningEntity                 | Mandatory   | Value shall be "DMTF".  |
| MessageArguments[0]          | Mandatory   | Value shall be identical to the value of the ElementName property in the CIM_Fan instance representing the fan that returned to the OK state. |
| MessageArguments[1]          | Mandatory   | Value shall be in WBEM URI format and refer to the CIM_ComputerSystem instance representing the scoping computer system.                      |

**X-7.4.38 Adaptation: FanDegradedAlert: CIM\_AlertIndication**

The FanDegradedAlert indication reports the event that a fan within a computer system starts operating in a degraded mode; for details, see the definition of message PLATMREG::PLAT0460.

The requirement level of the FanDegradedAlert indication adaptation is optional.

The implementation type of the FanDegradedAlert adaptation is: "indication".

Table X-49 lists the element requirements for this indication adaptation.

**Table X-49 – FanDegradedAlert: Element requirements**

| Element                      | Requirement | Description  |
|------------------------------|-------------|--|
| <b>Base adaptations</b>      |             |  |
| Indications::AlertIndication | Mandatory   | See <a href="#">DSP1054</a> .  |
| <b>Alert messages</b>        |             |  |
| PLATMREG::PLAT0460           | Mandatory   | See DSP8007.   |
| <b>Properties</b>            |             |  |
| AlertingManagedElement       | Mandatory   | Value shall reference the Fan instance representing the fan that is in a degraded state. |
| MessageID                    | Mandatory   | Value shall be "PLAT0460".   |



|                     |           |   |
|---------------------|-----------|---|
| OwningEntity        | Mandatory | Value shall be "DMTF".  |
| MessageArguments[0] | Mandatory | Value shall be identical to the value of the ElementName property in the CIM_Fan instance representing the failed fan operating in a degraded mode. |
| MessageArguments[1] | Mandatory | Value shall be in WBEM URI format and refer to the CIM_ComputerSystem instance representing the scoping computer system.                            |

4871 **A.5 Example of the "Use cases" clause**

4872 Table A-8 provides an example of the "Use cases" profile specification clause.

4873 **Table A-8 – Example of "Use cases" clause**

|  |
|--|
| <p><b>X-8 Use cases</b></p> <p>...</p> <p><b>X-8.3 DetermineFanState</b></p> <p>This use case describes the use of the GetInstance( ) operation as adapted by this profile (see X-8.2.2) inspecting the state of a fan.</p> <p><b>X-8.3.1 Preconditions</b></p> <p>The client knows the instance path of the Fan instance representing the fan.</p> <p><b>X-8.3.2 Flow of activities</b></p> <p>1) The client obtains the Fan instance, invoking the GetInstance( ) operation with parameter values set as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The value of the InstancePath parameter is set to the input instance path that refers to the Fan instance.</li> <li>- Optionally, the value of the IncludedProperties[ ] array property may be set to one element whose value is "EnabledState"; this would reduce the returned instance to include only the value of the EnabledState property.</li> </ul> <p>The implementation executes the operation as requested by the client.</p> <p>If the GetInstance( ) operation returns, the use-case continues with step 2).</p> <p>If the GetInstance( ) operation causes an exception, the use-case continues with step 4).</p> <p>2) The client inspects the return value</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- A return value of 0 indicates successful execution of the intrinsic operation; the use-case continues with step 3).</li> <li>- A return value of 1 (Not Supported) indicates that the implementation does not support the method; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.3.3.2 apply.</li> <li>- A return value of 2 (Unknown or Unspecified Error) indicates an error situation that is not covered by the profile specification; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in</li> </ul> |
|--|

9.3.3.2 apply.

- 3) The client inspects the value of the EnabledState property of the returned CIM\_Fan instance:
  - A value of 0 (Unknown) indicates that the state of the fan is unknown; this may be a temporary condition.
  - A value of 2 (Enabled) indicates that the fan is active.
  - A value of 3 (Disabled) indicates that the fan is inactive.
  - A value of 4 (Shutting Down) indicates that the fan is in the process of deactivating.
  - A value of 10 (Starting) indicates that the fan is in the process of activating.
  - Other values are not adapted by this profile.

This completes the use-case; the postconditions in X-8.3.3.1 apply.

- 4) The GetInstance( ) intrinsic operation caused an exception. The client inspects the CIM\_Error instances returned as part of the exception.

### **X-8.3.3 Postconditions**

This subclause lists possible situations after the use case execution.

#### **X-8.3.3.1 Success**

The fan state as reflected by the value of the EnabledState property is known to the client.

#### **X-8.3.3.2 Failure**

The fan state could not be determined; reasons were reflected through either through the value of the return value or through CIM\_Error instances delivered as part of an exception.

...

### **X-8.7 EnableFan**

This use-case describes the use of the RequestStateChange( ) method as adapted by this profile (see X-8.1.1) for enabling a fan.

#### **X-8.7.1 Preconditions**

- The client knows the instance path of the CIM\_Fan instance representing the fan.
- Fan state changes are supported for that instance (for detection see X-9.4) and the fan is currently disabled (for inspection see X-8.3).

#### **X-8.7.2 Flow of activities**

- 1) The client requests activation of the fan, invoking the RequestStateChange( ) method on the input instance representing the fan, with parameter values set as follows:
  - The value of the RequestedState property is 2 (Enabled)
  - The value of the TimeoutPeriod property is not provided (Null)

The implementation executes the method as requested by the client.

If the RequestStateChange() method returns, the use-case continues with step 2).

If the RequestStateChange() method causes an exception, the use-case continues with step 3).

- 2) The client inspects the return value:
  - A return value of 0 indicates successful execution of the method. This completes the use-case; the post-conditions in X-8.7.4.1 apply.
  - A return value of 1 (Not Supported) indicates that the implementation does not support the method; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.
  - A return value of 2 (Unknown or Unspecified Error) indicates an error situation that is not covered by the profile specification; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.3 apply.
  - A return value of 4 (Failed) indicates that the implementation was unable to enable the fan; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.
  - A return value of 5 (Invalid Parameter) indicates that one or more of the input parameters were invalid; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.
  - A return value of 6 (In Use) indicates that the fan is in use by another management activity; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.3 apply.
  - A return value of 4096 (Method Parameter Checked – Job Stared) indicates that an asynchronous task was started that performs and controls the fan state change operation that is represented by a CIM\_ConcreteJob instance referenced by the value of the Job output parameter; the use-case continues with step 4).
  - A return value of 4097 (Invalid State Transition) indicates that the fan is in a state that (presently) does not allow a transition to the requested state; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.
- 3) The RequestStateChange() method caused an exception. The client inspects the CIM\_Error instances returned as part of the exception. This terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.
- 4) The client obtains the CIM\_ConcreteJob instance, invoking the GetInstance( ) operation with parameter values set as follows:
  - The value of the InstancePath parameter is set to value of the Job output parameter returned from step 1).

The implementation executes the intrinsic operation as requested by the client.

If the GetInstance( ) intrinsic operation returns, the use-case continues with step 5).

If the GetInstance( ) intrinsic operation causes an exception, the client inspects the CIM\_Error instances returned as part of the exception. This terminates the use case; the postconditions in X-8.7.4.3 apply.

- 5) The client inspects the value of the JobState property:
  - A value of 7 (Completed) indicates successful execution of the use-case. This completes the use-case; the post-conditions in X-8.7.4.1 apply.
  - A value matching { 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 11 | 12 } (New | Starting | Running | Suspended | Service | Query pending) indicates that the asynchronous task has not yet finished; after waiting a certain delay, the client continues with repeating step 4).
  - Any other value matching indicates an error situation or a situation not anticipated in this profile; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.

**X-8.7.4 Postconditions**

This subclause lists possible situations after the use case execution.

**X-8.7.4.1 Success**

- The fan is enabled.
- If inspected for example by performing use-case X-8.3, the value of the EnabledState property in the instance of the CIM\_Fan class representing the fan has the value 1 (Enabled).

**NOTE** The client should regularly validate (for example through the application of use-case X-8.3) that the fan remains enabled, as conditions in the managed environment (failures, activities by other operators, etc.) could cause fan state changes. Alternatively the client could monitor CIM\_InstModification indications indicating state changes in the CIM\_Fan instance representing the fan.

**X-8.7.4.2 Failure with unchanged state**

The fan remains disabled.

**X-8.7.4.3 Failure with undefined state**

The state of the fan is undetermined.

## Annex B (informative)

### Regular expression syntax

4874  
4875  
4876  
4877

4878 This annex defines the regular expression syntax used in profile specifications to specify the format of  
4879 values, especially those representing identifiers. The regular expression grammar below uses Augmented  
4880 BNF (ABNF) as defined in [RFC5234](#).

4881 The ABNF usage conventions defined in the Document conventions of this guide apply.

4882 Profile regular expressions are a subset of the regular expressions defined in [UNIX Regular Expressions](#).

4883 The following elements are defined:

#### 4884 **Special characters**

4885 `SpecialChar = "." / "\" / "[" / "]" / "^" / "$" / "*" / "+" / "?" /`  
4886 `"/" / "|"`

4887 where

|      |                   |  |
|------|-------------------|--|
| 4888 | <code>"."</code>  | matches any single character   |
| 4889 | <code>"\"</code>  | escapes the next character so that it isn't a <code>SpecialChar</code> |
| 4890 | <code>"["</code>  | starts a <code>CharacterChoice</code>                                  |
| 4891 | <code>"]"</code>  | ends a <code>CharacterChoice</code>                                    |
| 4892 | <code>"^"</code>  | indicates a <code>LeftAnchor</code>                                    |
| 4893 | <code>"\$"</code> | indicates a <code>RightAnchor</code>                                   |
| 4894 | <code>"*"</code>  | indicates that the preceding item is matched zero or more times.       |
| 4895 | <code>"+"</code>  | indicates that the preceding item will be matched one or more times.   |
| 4896 | <code>"?"</code>  | indicates that the preceding item is optional,                         |
| 4897 |                   | and will be matched at most once.                                      |
| 4898 | <code>" "</code>  | separates choices  |

#### 4899 **Ordinary characters**

4900 `OrdinaryChar = UnicodeChar, except SpecialChar`

4901 where

4902 `UnicodeChar` refers to any Unicode character, as defined in [RFC3629](#).

#### 4903 **Escaped special characters**

4904 `EscapedChar = "\" SpecialChar`

#### 4905 **Simple character**

4906 `SimpleChar = OrdinaryChar / EscapedChar`

#### 4907 **Character sequence**

4908 `CharacterSequence = SimpleChar [ CharacterSequence ]`

4909 A `CharacterSequence` is a sequence of `SimpleChars`, for example:

4910 `"ABC"` matching `"ABC"`, or

4911 "D.F" matching "DAF", "DBF", "DCF", and so forth.

#### 4912 Character choice

4913 `CharacterChoice = "[" CharacterSequence "]" [ "^" ]`

4914 A `CharacterChoice` defines a set of possible characters. It is indicated by square brackets  
4915 ("[" and "]" ) enclosing the set of characters.

4916 – If a caret ("^") is *not* suffixed after the closing bracket, any character from the set  
4917 matches. For example, "r[au]t" matches "rat" or "rut".

4918 – If a caret ("^") is suffixed after the closing bracket, any character *not* in the set matches.  
4919 For example, "r[au]^t" matches any three-character sequence with the middle character not  
4920 being "a" or "u", for example, "ret" or "r.t".

#### 4921 Single character

4922 `SingleChar = "." / SimpleChar / CharacterChoice`

4923 For example,

4924 "D.F" matching "DAF", "DBF", "DCF", and so forth, or

4925 "GH[IJ]" matching "GHI" or "GHJ".

#### 4926 Multipliers

4927 `Multiplier = "*" / "+" / "?" / "{" UnsignedInt ["," [UnsignedInt]] "}"`

4928 where

4929 "\*" indicates that the preceding item is matched zero or more times

4930 "?" indicates that the preceding item is matched zero or one time  
4931 (optional item)

4932 "+" indicates that the preceding item is matched one or more times

4933 `UnsignedInt` is an unsigned integer number

#### 4934 Multiplied character

4935 `MultipliedChar = SingleChar [ Multiplier ]`

4936 A `MultipliedChar` is a `SingleChar` with a `Multiplier` applying, for example:

4937 "C\*" matching "", "C", "CC", "CCC", and so forth, or

4938 "[EF]{1,2}" matching "E", "F", "EE", "EF", "FE" or "FF"

#### 4939 Character expression

4940 `CharacterExpression = MultipliedChar [ CharacterExpression ]`

4941 A `CharacterExpression` is a descriptor for a sequence of one or more characters, for  
4942 example:

4943 "X" matching "X" only,

4944 "ABC" matching "ABC" only,

4945 "ABC\*" matching "AB", "ABC", "ABCC", "ABCCC", and so forth,

4946 "A[BC]D" matching "ABD" or "ACD", or

4947                    "1[.]{2,3}n"                    matching "1..n" or "1...n".

4948                    **Grouping**

4949                    Grouping = "(" CharacterExpression ")" [ Multiplier ]

4950                    A Grouping is a CharacterExpression that optionally can be multiplied, for example:

4951                    "(ABC)"                    matching "ABC",

4952                    "(XYZ)+"                    matching "XYZ", "XYZXYZ", "XYZXYZXYZ", and so forth.

4953                    **ChoiceElement**

4954                    ChoiceElement = Grouping / CharacterExpression

4955                    **Choice**

4956                    Choice = ChoiceElement [ "|" Choice ]

4957                    A Choice is a choice from one or more ChoiceElements, for example:

4958                    "(DEF)?"                    matching "" or "DEF",

4959                    "GHI"                    matching "GHI", or

4960                    "(DEF)?|GHI"                    matching "", "DEF", or "GHI".

4961                    **Left anchor**

4962                    LeftAnchor = "^"

4963                    A LeftAnchor forces a match at the beginning of a string.

4964                    **Right anchor**

4965                    RightAnchor = "\$"

4966                    A RightAnchor forces a match at the end of a string.

4967                    **AnchoredExpression**

4968                    AnchoredExpression = [ RightAnchor ] Choice [ LeftAnchor ]

4969                    An AnchoredExpression is a Choice that is optionally anchored to the left end, to the right  
4970                    end, or to both ends of a string.

4971                    **AnchoredChoice**

4972                    AnchoredChoice = AnchoredExpression [ AnchoredChoice ]

4973                    An AnchoredChoice is a choice from one or more AnchoredExpressions.

4974                    **RegularExpressionInProfile**

4975                    RegularExpressionInProfile = AnchoredChoice

4976                    A regular expression within a profile is an AnchoredChoice.

## Annex C (informative)

### Change log

4977  
4978  
4979  
4980  
  
4981

| Version | Date       | Description  |
|---------|------------|--|
| 1.0.0   | 2006-06-14 |  |
| 1.0.1   | 2009-08-05 | DMTF Standard Release.<br>Changes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Updated copyright statement</li> <li>• Updated and corrected references listed in 2</li> <li>• Added provisions for specifying a scoping algorithm in 6.1</li> <li>• Simplified and corrected profile conventions for operations in 6.4.2</li> <li>• Added Annex F, Experimental Content</li> <li>• Added Annex G, Change Log</li> <li>• Added Bibliography</li> <li>• Minor text corrections throughout the document.</li> </ul>  |
| 1.1.0   | 2011-06-30 | DMTF Standard<br>Incorporated changes resulting from comments: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refine the definition of requirement levels with respect to their impact on the implementation, and define how they are to be used in profiles</li> <li>• Synchronize the approaches for metrics and indications</li> <li>• Allow that indication/metric adaptations can also be defined on adaptations that are based on those in the Indications / Base Metrics profiles</li> <li>• Multiple alert message possible for one alert indication adaptation</li> <li>• Clarified that a business entity can be an "organization"</li> <li>• Introduce the concept of an implementation type for adaptations</li> <li>• Added the "prohibited" requirement level</li> <li>• Subcategories in the "Adaptation table"</li> <li>• Require that association adaptations, and adaptations they reference, are to be required separately in profiles, with the suggestion of defining a direct or feature based dependency</li> <li>• Allow concrete profiles to specify abstract adaptations (because those have no impact on clients or implementations)</li> <li>• Add provision to allow separate constraints to be specified for presentation, initialization and modification of properties</li> <li>• Add provisions to allow input value requirements for properties and method parameters</li> <li>• Prohibition of input values for key properties</li> <li>• Requiring profiles to define a CIM based discovery mechanism for conditional / conditional exclusive and optional profile elements that enables client to determine whether the profile element is implemented (see 7.5).</li> <li>• Lifted strong 20 word requirements in table cells to recommendation</li> <li>• Renamed "General requirements" subclause of "Adaptations" subclause to "Conventions"</li> <li>• Require a non-Null value for mandatory properties in adaptation instances (and for conditional / conditional exclusive properties, with the condition being True)</li> <li>• New concepts: Adaptations, features and events</li> <li>• Deprecation of multiple inheritance for profiles</li> <li>• Rules for the definition of indications</li> </ul> |



| Version | Date       | Description   |
|---------|------------|---|
|         |            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rules for defining the relationship to the managed environment</li> <li>• Condensed structure of profile specifications</li> <li>• Definition of metric-related requirements</li> <li>• Definition of indication-related requirements</li> <li>• DMTF adaptation diagrams</li> <li>• Abstract profiles may reference DSP1033</li> <li>• Renamed the "Profile conventions for operations" subclause to "General requirements"</li> <li>• Removed the following ABNF exceptions:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Use of " " in place of "/" for choices</li> <li>○ Use of ".." in place of "-" for ranges</li> <li>○ Insignificance of whitespace</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Removed events as profile element (covered with indications now)</li> <li>• Revised version of the merge algorithm</li> <li>• Combined all element requirements in one table, including base elements such as base adaptations</li> <li>• Introduced state descriptions as profile element (primarily for use-cases)</li> <li>• Introduced error reporting requirements as an extension of standard message requirements</li> <li>• Discourage use of "related profile" in favor of "referenced profile"</li> <li>• Divide referencing profiles into "profile derivation" and "profile usage"</li> <li>• Added requirement to specify operations using DSP0223</li> <li>• Added definition of WBEM listener implementation conformance</li> <li>• Lowered the requirement for following the rules on when to use the "conditional" and "conditional exclusive" requirement levels, to a recommendation</li> <li>• Clarified allowable number of base profiles in a derived profile</li> <li>• Added requirement that the schema version of a derived profile is at least as recent as the most recent schema version of its base profiles</li> <li>• Clarified scoping relationship</li> <li>• Clarified which version of a profile is effectively referenced in a profile reference</li> <li>• Added provision to designate base adaptation candidates</li> <li>• Added rules for the repetition of schema requirements</li> <li>• Added provision for specifying requirements for instance creation and modification operations</li> <li>• Clarified that the PRP itself is exempted from the requirement that concrete profiles must reference the PRP</li> <li>• Lifted the requirement that state descriptions need to be named, for state descriptions defined within use cases</li> <li>• Lifted requirement to implement each used profile separately, and made that an implementation consideration</li> <li>• Adapted common text for "Terms and definitions" clause to the conventions set forth by the ISO/IEC Directives</li> </ul> |
| 1.1.1   | 2014-02-11 | <p>Published as DMTF Standard, with the following changes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Changed operation names in examples to use the new operation names defined in DSP0223 1.0.2.</li> </ul>   |

## Bibliography

4982

4983 This clause lists references that are helpful for the application of this guide.

4984 DMTF DSP0200, *CIM Operations over HTTP 1.3*,  
4985 [http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published\\_documents/DSP0200\\_1.3.pdf](http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP0200_1.3.pdf)

4986 DMTF DSP1000, *Management Profile Specification Template 1.1*  
4987 [http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published\\_documents/DSP1000\\_1.1.pdf](http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP1000_1.1.pdf)

4988 UML Specifications,  
4989 [http://www.omg.org/technology/documents/modeling\\_spec\\_catalog.htm#UML](http://www.omg.org/technology/documents/modeling_spec_catalog.htm#UML)

4990